TITLE ON THE LATTICE AUTOMORPHISMS OF CERTAIN ALGEBRAIC GROUPS

AUTHOR Mauro Costantini

INSTITUTION and DATE University of Warwick 1989

ON THE LATTICE AUTOMORPHISMS OF CERTAIN ALGEBRAIC GROUPS

by

Mauro Costantini

Thesis submitted for the degree of Ph.D.
September 1989
University of Warwick

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

First of all I wish to mention my parents for the complete freedom I have always been given in my choices , and for all the good advice they have been giving me throughout the years .

I wish to thank my supervisor , Professor R.W. Carter , for the helpful conversations and for his constant encouragement and enthusiasm . I am also indebted to Professor G. Zacher who first introduced me to lattices and whose discussions are always very interesting and fruitful .

I express my thanks to C.N.R. for financial support and to all the people who were close to me during my stay at the University of Warwick . In particular I would like to mention Matic . And Sandra .

Summary

In the first chapter we give an introduction, and a survey of known results, which we shall use throughout the dissertation.

In the second chapter we first prove that every projectivity of a connected reductive non-abelian algebraic group G over $K = \bar{F}_p$ is strictly index-preserving (Theorem 2.1.6.). Then we prove that every autoprojectivity of G induces an automorphism of the building canonically associated to G. Furthermore we show how certain autoprojectivities of G act on the Weyl group of G and on the Dynkin diagram of G.

In the third chapter we restrict our attention to simple algebraic groups over K. We prove that if G is a simple algebraic group over K of rank at least 2, then the problem whether every autoprojectivity of G is induced by an automorphism, is reduced to the problem whether every autoprojectivity of G fixing every parabolic subgroup of G is the identity. Namely, if we let

$$\Gamma(G) = \{\varphi \in \mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G) \mid P^{\varphi} = P \text{ for every parabolic subgroup } P \text{ of } G\},$$

we have

$$\mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G) = \Gamma \rtimes (\mathrm{Aut}\, G)^{*},$$

where $(\mathrm{Aut}\, G)^{*}$ is the group of all autoprojectivities of G induced by an automorphism (Theorem 3.4.9. and Corollary 3.4.15.).

In Chapter 4 we prove that actually $\Gamma = \{1\}$ if G has rank at least 3 and $p \neq 2$ (Theorem 4.6.5.), while in Chapter 5 we prove the same result, with different arguments, for the case of rank 1 (Corollary 5.2.6.) and 2, type A_2 excluded (Corollary 5.3.8.) (for groups of rank 1 we impose no restrictions on p).

Finally, in Chapter 6 we show that for the groups of type A_2 Theorem 4.6.5. does not hold. For this purpose we construct a non-trivial subgroup of the group $\Gamma(SL_3(\bar{F}_{23}))$ (Corollary 6.4.15.).

Table of contents

Notation

If S , S_1 are sets , as usual

$S \subseteq S_1$ means that S is a subset of S_1 .

$S \cap S_1$ is the set theoretic intersection of S and S_1 .

$S \cup S_1$ is the set theoretic union of S and S_1 .

$S_1 \setminus S$ is the difference set of S_1 and S , namely the set of those elements belonging to S_1 but not to S .

$x \in S$ means that x belongs to S .

$\{x,y,z,\dots\}$ is the set consisting of the elements $x,y,z,\dots$.

$\mathbb{N}$ is the set of natural numbers . $\mathbb{N}_0$ is the set $\mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$.

$\mathbb{Z}$ is the set of integers .

If m , $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, $m \geq n$ means that m is greater or equal n (in the natural order of $\mathbb{Z}$) , whereas $m > n$ means that m is strictly greater than n .

(m,n) is the greatest common divisor of m and n .

$m \mid n$ means that m divides n , while $m \nmid n$ means that m does not divide n .

$m \equiv n \bmod r$ means m , n congruent modulo r .

If G is a group ,

$H \leq G$ means that H is a subgroup of G .

$H < G$ means that H is a proper subgroup of G .

$H \lhd G$ means that H is a normal subgroup of G .

If $H \leq K \leq G$,

$\mathcal{C}(H)$ is the centraliser of H in G ,

$\mathcal{N}(H)$ is the normaliser of H in G ,

$\mathcal{C}_K(H)$ is the centraliser of H in K ,

$\mathcal{N}_K(H)$ is the normaliser of H in K ,

$Z(G)$ is the center of G .

If $S \subseteq G$, $<S>$ is the subgroup of G generated by the elements of S.

If x, y are in G, $[x,y]$ denotes the element $x^{-1}y^{-1}xy$.

If S, S_1 are subgroups of G, $[S,S_1] = < x^{-1}y^{-1}xy \mid x \in S, y \in S_1 >$.

$G' = [G,G]$ is the derived subgroup of G.

If $x, g \in G$ $x^g = g^{-1}xg$, ${}^gx = gxg^{-1}$.

If $x, y \in G$, $x \sim y$ means x, y conjugate in G, while $x \equiv y \mod H$ means $x^{-1}y \in H$.

If $g \in G$ $H^g = g^{-1}Hg$, ${}^gH = gHg^{-1}$.

If $L \leq G$, $H^L = < H^g \mid g \in L >$.

If $g \in G$, $|g|$ is the order of g ($|g| = \infty$ if $<g>$ is infinite cyclic).

If H_λ, for λ in a set A, are groups, we denote by $\underset{\lambda \in A}{\mathrm{Cr}}\, H_\lambda$ the cartesian product of the H_λ's, and by $\underset{\lambda \in A}{\mathrm{Dr}}\, H_\lambda$ the external direct product of the H_λ's.

If A is finite, $A = \{1,\dots,n\}$ say, we shall denote $\underset{\lambda \in A}{\mathrm{Dr}}\, H_\lambda$ by $H_1 \times \dots \times H_n$.

If $H_1,\dots,H_k$ are normal subgroups of G such that $<H_1,\dots,H_k>$ is the internal direct product of $H_1,\dots,H_k$, then we denote $<H_1,\dots,H_k>$ by $H_1 \times \dots \times H_k$. We shall usually denote by $\underset{\lambda \in A}{\oplus} H_\lambda$ the internal product of a family $(H_\lambda)_{\lambda \in A}$ of normal subgroups of G, if G is abelian.

If p is a prime, we say that an element x of G is a p-element if the order of x is a power of p. We say that x is a p'-element if the order of x is finite and coprime to p.

C_n denotes the (multiplicative) cyclic group of order n.

For every prime p, C_{p^∞} denotes the Prüfer group relative to p.

If G is a p-group (i.e. every element of G is a p-element),

$\Omega_i(G) = < x \mid x \in G$ and $x^{p^i} = 1 >$. We denote $\Omega_1(G)$ simply by $\Omega(G)$.

S_n is the symmetric group over n letters, A_n is the alternating group over n letters.

$\mathcal{L}(G)$ is the complete lattice of all the subgroups of G.
$[G/H]$ is the lattice of all subgroups of G containing H.

Φ is the set of roots, Π a fundamental system of Φ, Φ^+ a set of positive roots of Φ and Φ^- a set of negative roots of Φ.
For every root α, X_α is the root-subgroup corresponding to α, and x_α is a fixed algebraic isomorphism $x_\alpha : K \longrightarrow X_\alpha$.
We denote the diagonal matrix $\begin{pmatrix} a&0&0 \\ 0&b&0 \\ 0&0&c \end{pmatrix}$ by diag (a,b,c).

$N_{r,s}$ are the structure constants (r, s roots).
$M_{r,s,i}$ is the integer $(i!)^{-1} N_{r,s} N_{r,r+s} \cdots N_{r,(i-1)r+s}$ (r, s roots, i in $\mathbb{N}$).
If T is a subgroup of G, we denote by $\dot{w}$ any element of $\mathcal{N}(T)$ which is mapped to the element w of $\mathcal{N}(T)/T$ under the natural projection.

We shall usually write characters, cocharacters, the isomorphisms x_α and elements of the symmetric group on the left, while we shall usually write isomorphisms and projectivities of groups on the right.

Chapter 1 Introduction

The aim of the present dissertation is to study the group of lattice automorphisms of certain algebraic groups . As we shall deal both with properties of lattices and of algebraic groups , we give a short survey of the results of which we shall make use . We begin with lattices .

§ 1.1 A survey on lattices .

Let $(P,\leq)$ be a partially ordered set , and let X be any subset of P . We say that an element y of P is an *upper bound* of X if we have

$x \leq y$ for every x in X .

We say that an element a of X is a *least element* of X if we have

$a \leq x$ for every x in X (if it exists , it is then unique) .

Let us denote by $\mathcal{M}$ the set of all upper bounds of X . If $\mathcal{M}$ is not empty , and it has a least element , then this element is called *the least upper bound* of X , and it is denoted by *sup X* . Similarly one can define *the greatest lower bound* of X , which is denoted by *inf X* .

We can now give the definition of a lattice .

Definition : A *lattice* is a partially ordered set $(L,\leq)$ such that for every x , y in L , there exist both $\sup\{x,y\}$ and $\inf\{x,y\}$. L is said to be a *complete* lattice if each of its subsets X has $\sup X$ and $\inf X$.

It is clear that any non-empty complete lattice contains a least element , denoted by O, and a greatest element , denoted by I .

Let L be a lattice . Then , for every x , y in L , $\sup\{x,y\}$ will be denoted by $x \vee y$, and it will also be called the join of x and y ; $\inf\{x,y\}$ will be denoted by $x \wedge y$, and it will also be called the meet of x and y .

We also give the notion of sublattice and of cartesian product of lattices .

<u>Definition</u> : A *sublattice* of a lattice L is a subset X of L such that

$a \in X, b \in X \Longrightarrow a \vee b$ and $a \wedge b \in X$.

If we are given a family $(L_a)_{a \in A}$ of lattices, the *cartesianproduct* of the L_a's is the set $\{(x_a) \mid x_a \in L_a \ \forall a \in A\}$, and it is denoted by by $\underset{a \in A}{\mathrm{Cr}} L_a$. This becomes a lattice if we define the partial order componentwise.

<u>Examples</u> : Let X be any set. Then the set $\mathcal{P}(X)$ of all subsets of X partially ordered by inclusion is a complete lattice. For any family S of subsets of X, inf S is the set theoretic intersection of the elements of S, while sup S is the set theoretic union of the elements of S.

A partially ordered set C such that for every x, y in C we have

either $x \leq y$ or $y \leq x$,

is said to be totally ordered, and it is called a *chain*. Any chain is a lattice. The set $\mathbb{N}$ of the natural numbers with the usual total order is a chain, but it is not a complete lattice.

Let G be a group. We denote by $\mathcal{L}(G)$ the set of all subgroups of G partially ordered by inclusion. $\mathcal{L}(G)$ is a complete lattice. If $(X_a)_{a \in A}$ is a family of subgroups of G, then $\bigwedge_{a \in A} X_a$ is the set theoretic intersection of all the X_a's, while $\bigvee_{a \in A} X_a$ is the subgroup $\langle X_a \mid a \in A \rangle$ generated by all the X_a's.

As the union and the intersection of two normal subgroups of G are normal, the subset of all normal subgroups of G is a sublattice of $\mathcal{L}(G)$.

In any lattice L the following holds.

L 1	$x \wedge x = x$, $x \vee x = x$	(idempotent)
L 2	$x \wedge y = y \wedge x$, $x \vee y = y \vee x$	(commutative)
L 3	$(x \wedge y) \wedge z = x \wedge (y \wedge z)$, $(x \vee y) \vee z = x \vee (y \vee z)$	(associative)
L 4	$x \wedge (x \vee y) = x \vee (x \wedge y) = x$	(absorption).

We have the following result :

Let L be a set with two binary operations $\vee$, $\wedge$ satisfying L 1–L 4 . Then L is a lattice , and conversely ([Bi] Theorem 8 page 10) .

If we are given $(L,\vee,\wedge)$ satisfying L 1–L 4 , then the partial order on L is given by the definition

$x \leq y \Leftrightarrow x \wedge y = x \ (\Leftrightarrow x \vee y = y)$

We shall write $(L,\leq)$ or $(L,\vee,\wedge)$ as it is more convenient .

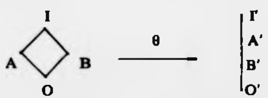
Let $(P,\leq)$, $(P',\leq')$ be partially ordered sets . A map $\theta : P \longrightarrow P'$ is said to be *order-preserving* if for every x , y in P such that $x \leq y$, we have $x^{\theta} \leq' y^{\theta}$.

Let $(L,\vee,\wedge)$, $(L',\vee',\wedge')$ be lattices . A map $\theta : L \longrightarrow L'$ is called a *lattice homomorphism* if we have

$$(x\wedge y)^{\theta} = x^{\theta} \wedge' y^{\theta} \quad \text{and} \quad (x\vee y)^{\theta} = x^{\theta} \vee' y^{\theta} \qquad \text{for every } x , y \text{ in } L .$$

θ will be called a *lattice isomorphism* if θ is bijective , and a *lattice automorphism* if $L = L'$, $\vee = \vee'$, $\wedge = \wedge'$, and θ is bijective .

If $\theta : L \longrightarrow L'$ is a lattice isomorphism , then both θ and θ^{-1} are order-preserving . We also have the converse , i.e. if we have a bijection θ between two lattices L and L' such that both θ and θ^{-1} are order-preserving , then θ is a lattice isomorphism . Note that the fact that θ is order-preserving is not enough to guarantee that θ is a lattice isomorphism , as the following example illustrates .



$I \mapsto I'$ $\quad A \mapsto A'$

$B \mapsto B'$ $\quad O \mapsto O'$

We now introduce the concept of modular and distributive lattices .

A lattice L is *modular* if it satisfies the "modular identity" (also called Dedekind Law)

$x \vee (y \wedge z) = (x \vee y) \wedge z$

for every x, y, z in L such that $x \leq z$.

Example : The lattice of normal subgroups of a group is a modular lattice.

A lattice L is *distributive* if we have

$x \wedge (y \vee z) = (x \wedge y) \vee (x \wedge z)$ for every x, y, z in L

(Note: this is equivalent to

$x \vee (y \wedge z) = (x \vee y) \wedge (x \vee z)$ for every x, y, z in L.

(Theorem 9 page 11 in [Bi]).

Example: Any chain is a distributive lattice.

Before fixing our attention to the lattice $L(G)$ for a given group G, we give some other definitions.

Let P be a partially ordered set. Let a, b be elements of P. By "*a covers b*" it is meant that $a > b$, but $a > x > b$ for no x in P. If a, b are elements of P such that $a \geq b$, then the set $\{ x \in P \mid b \leq x \leq a \}$ is called an *interval* of P.

Let C be a finite chain with n elements. Then the *length* $\ell(C)$ of C is defined to be $n-1$. In general, the *length* $\ell(P)$ of a partially ordered set P is defined to be the least upper bound of the lengths of the chains in P. When $\ell(P)$ is finite, P is said to be of finite length. Any partially ordered set P of finite length is defined up to isomorphism by its covering relations, i.e. we have $a > b$ if and only if there exists a finite sequence $x_0, \ldots, x_n$ of elements of P such that $x_0 = a$, $x_n = b$ and x_{i-1} covers x_i for $i = 1, \ldots, n$.

If a partially ordered set P has the least element O, then an element a of P is said to be an *atom* if a covers O.

Let L be a lattice with O and I. Then if x is an element of L, by a *complement* of x in L is meant any element y of L such that $x \wedge y = O$ and $x \vee y = I$. L is called *complemented* if all its elements have complements.

<u>Example</u> : The modular lattice of all subspaces of a vector space over a field is complemented.

A *Boolean lattice* is a complemented distributive lattice. In a Boolean lattice complements are unique, and in any Boolean lattice of finite length, every element is a join of atoms (ex. 7a page 18 in [Bi]).

We shall now consider more closely how the lattice $L(G)$ of a given group G influences the structure of G.

§ 1.2 The lattice $L(G)$.

We first give some examples of the lattices $L(G)$ arising from some particular groups.

(1) Let G be a cyclic group C_{p^n} of order p^n, $n \geq 1$, p a prime. Then $L(G)$ is a chain of length n.

(2) Let G be the direct product of 2 copies of C_p, p a prime. Then $L(G)$ is represented by the diagram

So $L(G)$ is a modular lattice of length 2, and it has $p+1$ atoms.

(3) Let G be the symmetric group S_3. Then $L(G)$ is represented by the diagram

We now introduce some standard notation. Let G, $\bar{G}$ be groups. We shall call a *projectivity* of G onto $\bar{G}$ any lattice isomorphism

$$\varphi : L(G) \longrightarrow L(\bar{G}) .$$

We shall call an *autoprojectivity* of G any projectivity of G onto itself. We shall denote by $\mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G)$ the group of all autoprojectivities of G. Two groups $G, \bar{G}$ will be called *projective* if there exists a projectivity of G onto $\bar{G}$.

We shall use the usual abuse of notation $\varphi : G \longrightarrow \bar{G}$ to denote a projectivity φ of G onto $\bar{G}$, but we shall write $\varphi : \mathcal{L}(G) \longrightarrow \mathcal{L}(\bar{G})$ if there could be any ambiguity.

Many questions of different kinds arise in the attempt to relate the structure of a group to the structure of the lattice of its subgroups. For instance, let $\alpha : G \longrightarrow \bar{G}$ be an isomorphism of groups. Then we have of course $N \lhd G \Leftrightarrow N^{\alpha} \lhd \bar{G}$, $Z(G)^{\alpha} = Z(\bar{G})$, $(G')^{\alpha} = \bar{G}'$, G is nilpotent $\Leftrightarrow \bar{G}$ is nilpotent, and so on.

The situation for projectivities is very different. Let us consider the groups $G = C_3 \times C_3$ and $\bar{G} = S_3$. From the examples (2) and (3), it follows that G and $\bar{G}$ are projective. Let φ be a fixed projectivity of G onto $\bar{G}$. Let σ be an involution of $\bar{G}$, and let A be the subgroup of G such that $A^{\varphi} = \langle\sigma\rangle$. Then we have

$A \lhd G$ but $A^{\varphi} \ntriangleleft \bar{G}$,

$Z(G)^{\varphi} = \bar{G}$, while $Z(\bar{G}) = \{1\}$

$(G')^{\varphi} = \{1\}$ while $\bar{G}' = A_3$,

G is abelian, while $\bar{G}$ is even not nilpotent,

A has order 3, while A^{φ} has order 2.

Many results are nevertheless known. In the following we are going to recall those which will be used throughout the dissertation.

Let $\varphi : G \longrightarrow \bar{G}$ be a projectivity between the groups G and $\bar{G}$. Then

(i). G is finite if and only if $\bar{G}$ is finite.

(ii). G is cyclic if and only if $\bar{G}$ is cyclic (This result was obtained by Ore in 1938, while classifying the groups whose lattice of subgroups is distributive [O]).

(iii). $L(G)$ is a cartesian product of lattices L_a $(a \in A)$ if and only if G is a direct product of groups G_a $(a \in A)$ such that $L(G_a)$ is isomorphic to L_a for every a in A, and the order of any element of G_a is finite and coprime to the order of any element of G_b for every b in A, $b \neq a$ ([S] theorem 4 page 5).
(iv). G is solvable if and only if $\bar{G}$ is solvable (This was first obtained by Zappa in 1951 for the finite case [Za] . Yacovlev then proved the general result in 1970 [Y] . In his paper Yacovlev also gave a bound for the derived length of $\bar{G}$ in terms of a cubic polynomial in the derived length n of G . The best result in this direction was obtained by Busetto and Napolitani in 1988 , and puts the bound down to $3n-1$ [B,N]).
(v). If H, K are subgroups of G such that $K \leq H$ and $[H: K] < \infty$, then we have $[H^\varphi: K^\varphi] < \infty$ (This result was first proved by Rips [R] . Zacher gives a beautiful proof of this result in [Z_2]) .
(vi). In his book [S] , Suzuki defined φ to be *index-preserving* if given $H \leq K \leq G$, K cyclic and $[H: K] = n$, then we have $[H^\varphi: K^\varphi] = n$.
He also defined φ to be *strictly index-preserving* if given $H \leq K \leq G$ and $[H: K] = n$, then we have $[H^\varphi: K^\varphi] = n$.
An index-preserving projectivity maps p-groups to p-groups , so that every index-preserving projectivity is strictly index-preserving if G is finite . As a consequence of (v), it has been possible to prove this in general , i.e. a projectivity is strictly index-preserving if and only if it is index-preserving ([Z_2] Corollario 3).
(vii). If G is finite , and φ is not index-preserving , then G contains a normal Sylow complement N such that G/N is either a cyclic p-group , or an elementary abelian p-group ([S] Theorem 8 , page 45) .
(viii). If N is a normal subgroup of G such that N has no proper subgroup of finite index , then N^φ is normal in $\bar{G}$ ([Z_2] Corollario 2).

Let G , $\bar{G}$ be groups , and let $\alpha : G \longrightarrow \bar{G}$ be an isomorphism . Then we can define in a natural way the projectivity $\alpha^* : G \longrightarrow \bar{G}$ given by

$X^{\alpha^*} = X^\alpha$ for every $X \leq G$, where X^{α} is as usual the subgroup $\{ x^{\alpha} \mid x \in X \}$ of $\bar{G}$. α^* is called the projectivity induced by the isomorphism α. If $\bar{G} = G$, then α^* is called the autoprojectivity of G induced by the automorphism α. We therefore have a homomorphism $* : \mathrm{Aut}\, G \longrightarrow \mathrm{Aut}\, L(G)$ given by $\alpha \mapsto \alpha^*$ for every α in $\mathrm{Aut}\, G$.

An interesting question is whether a projectivity $\varphi : G \longrightarrow \bar{G}$ is induced by an isomorphism and, if so, if the isomorphism inducing φ is unique.
A group G is said to be *strongly lattice determined* if every projectivity $\varphi : G \longrightarrow \bar{G}$ of G onto a group $\bar{G}$ is induced by an isomorphism $\alpha : G \longrightarrow \bar{G}$. As for almost all the groups we are going to study φ will be induced by at most one automorphism, we shall use the convention to reserve always the term strongly lattice determined for groups such that every projectivity φ is induced by a unique isomorphism α.

It is clear that G is strongly lattice determined if and only if we have
G projective to $\bar{G} \Rightarrow G$ isomorphic to $\bar{G}$,
and the homomorphism $* : \mathrm{Aut}\, G \longrightarrow \mathrm{Aut}\, L(G)$ is bijective.

Known examples of finite groups which are strongly lattice determined are

the symmetric group S_n for $n \geq 4$ ([Z_1]);

the alternating group A_n for $n \geq 5$, $n \neq 3^r, 3^r+1$, where r is odd and greater than 2 [Sch];

the projective special linear groups $PSL_2(q)$ for $q = p^f \geq 4$, where p is a prime ([M_1]), and $PSL_3(3)$ ([M_2]), and the Suzuki groups $Sz(2^{n+1})$, where $n > 0$ ([M_2]).

For the simple groups A_n Schmidt gave also the structure of $\mathrm{Aut}\, L(A_n)$ for the exceptional values of n ([Sch]).

It is known that if G is a finite simple group, then we have

G projective to $\bar{G}$ $\Rightarrow$ G isomorphic to $\bar{G}$.

(The proof makes use of the classification of the finite simple groups. To our knowledge no direct proof is available at present). Therefore, in order to prove that a finite simple group is strongly lattice determined, it is enough to show that the homomorphism $*$: Aut G $\rightarrow$ Aut $L(G)$ is bijective. We also note that, by a result by Cooper ([Co], 2.2.2.), if G is a perfect group, then the map $*$ is injective. Hence a finite simple group G is strongly lattice determined if and only if the homomorphism $*$: Aut G $\rightarrow$ Aut $L(G)$ is surjective.

The groups studied by Metelli are a special family of finite simple groups of Lie type, and a conjecture was made that for all finite simple groups of Lie type the homomorphism $*$ was surjective. In 1985 Völklein proved this for the groups,

($\dagger$) $\quad B_\ell$, C_ℓ, $D_{2\ell}$, ${}^2D_{2\ell}$, ${}^3D_4$, E_7, E_8, F_4, G_2,

where the characteristic p of the base field is at least 11 ([V_1]).

From the theory of groups of Lie type, if G is a simple group of Lie type in the list ($\dagger$) over the finite field k, then G arises as the subgroup generated by the unipotent elements of the group of k-rational points of a certain adjoint simple algebraic group $\underline{G}$ defined over k. The groups in the list ($\dagger$) are exactly those arising from simple adjoint algebraic groups $\underline{G}$ whose Weyl groups have non-trivial center. Indeed, in 1985 Volklein ([V_1]) and the author ([Cs_1]) proved that for the groups $PSL_3(q)$ the homomorphism $*$ is not in general surjective. In 1988 we showed that q = 17 is the least prime-power number such that $PSL_3(q)$ has autoprojectivities not induced by automorphism ([Cs_2]).

This is in a certain sense the starting point for the present dissertation. The problem whether for the finite simple groups of Lie type G for which the Weyl group of $\underline{G}$ is trivial, the map $*$ is surjective, turned out to be much harder. Then it seemed an important step to consider the problem for simple algebraic groups over the algebraic closure of the finite fields F_q.

In the next paragraph we shall make a short survey of the properties of algebraic groups that we shall use .

§ 1.3 A survey on algebraic groups .

We shall deal only with algebraic groups over an algebraically closed field K . We recall that an *algebraic group* is a group G endowed with the structure of an algebraic variety such that the product map

$\mu : G \times G \longrightarrow G$ given by $\mu(x,y) = xy$ for every x , y in G

and the inversion map

$\iota : G \longrightarrow G$ given by $\iota(x) = x^{-1}$ for every x in G ,

are both algebraic maps .

We shall use the convention to reserve always the term algebraic group for those groups whose underlying variety is affine .

Examples : The *additive group* G_a is the affine line with the group law $\mu(x,y) = x+y$. We shall always denote this group by K . The *multiplicative group* G_m is the affine open subset K^* of the affine line , with group law $\mu(x,y) = xy$. We shall always denote this group by K^* .

If G is an algebraic group , then any closed subgroup of G is an algebraic group . If G_1 , G_2 are two algebraic groups then their direct product $G_1 \times G_2$ can be made into an algebraic group in a natural way .

The group $GL_n(K)$ of all non-singular $n \times n$ matrices over K may be regarded as an algebraic group as an affine open subset of K^{n^2} (hence as a closed subset of K^{n^2+1}) . Several other examples of algebraic groups can be obtained as closed subgroups of $GL_n(K)$, as the special linear group $SL_n(K)$, the symplectic group $Sp_n(K)$, the special orthogonal group $SO_n(K)$, and so on .

In fact every (affine) algebraic group over K can be viewed as a closed subgroup of $GL_n(K)$ for some n ([Hu] Theorem 8.6).

Let G , $\bar{G}$ be algebraic groups . A map $\alpha : G \longrightarrow \bar{G}$ ic called a *homomorphism of algebraic groups* if α is both an algebraic map and a homomorphism of groups. α is an isomorphism if it is bijective and both α and α^{-1} are homomorphisms of algebraic groups. We note that for a map α it is not enough to be a bijective algebraic homomorphism to be an isomorphism, as one can see from the following example.

Take $K = \bar{F}_p$, $G = K^*$, and $\alpha : G \to G$ given by $x \mapsto x^{p^n}$ for every x in K^*, where n is any natural number. Then α is a bijective algebraic homomorphism but not an algebraic isomorphism.

Let G be an algebraic group. Then G has a unique irreducible component (as a topological space) passing through the identity, which is denoted by G^0. G^0 is a normal closed subgroup of finite index of G. We also have that the cosets of G^0 are at the same time the connected components and the irreducible components of G ([Hu] Proposition 7.3).

An algebraic group G is said to be connected if $G^0 = G$. We recall that the dimension $\dim G$ of G is the dimension of the underlying variety of G.

Let $G, \bar{G}$ be algebraic groups, and let $\alpha : G \to \bar{G}$ be a homomorphism of algebraic groups. Then we have

$\ker \alpha$ is a closed subgroup of G;

$\operatorname{Im} \alpha$ is a closed subgroup of $\bar{G}$;

$\dim G = \dim \ker \alpha + \dim \operatorname{Im} \alpha$. ([Hu] Proposition 7.4B)

Also, if $(H_a)_{a \in A}$ is a family of closed and connected subgroups of G, then the group $< H_a \mid a \in A >$ they generate, is a closed and connected subgroup of G ([Hu] Proposition 7.5).

For any algebraic group G we can define the usual Jordan decomposition that we have for the groups $GL_n(K)$. In fact, for any algebraic group G, it is possible to give the definition of semisimple and of unipotent element, and then to show that for every x in G, there exist a unique semisimple element s and a unique unipotent element u in G such that $x = su = us$ ([Hu] Theorem 15.3). This fact is of key importance in the theory of algebraic groups .

We shall now shortly give the structure of abelian and solvable connected algebraic groups . Before this we give the definition of a torus and of a unipotent group .

A *torus* is an algebraic group T which is isomorphic to the direct product of a finite number , k say , of copies of K^* . Every element of a torus is semisimple , and the dimension of T is k .

An algebraic group will be called *unipotent* if each of its elements is unipotent .

Let G be an algebraic group . We denote by G_s the set of all semisimple elements of G , and by G_u the set of all unipotent elements of G . Suppose G is abelian . Then G_s and G_u are both closed subgroups of G , connected if G is connected , and we have $G = G_s \times G_u$ ([Hu] Theorem 15.5). Suppose now G is solvable and connected . Then G_u is a closed and connected normal subgroup of G . If T is any maximal torus of G , then we have
$G = G_u \rtimes T$ (a maximal torus of an algebraic group is by definition a closed subgroup of G which is a torus and which is not properly contained in any closed subgroup of G which is a torus). ([Hu] Theorem 19.3).

We now introduce the concept of semisimple and reductive algebraic group .

Let G be an algebraic group . The *radical* $R(G)$ of G is the largest closed connected normal solvable subgroup of G . The *unipotent radical* $R_u(G)$ of G is the largest closed connected normal unipotent subgroup of G (of course we have $R_u(G) = R(G)_u$).

<u>Definition</u> : Let G be a connected algebraic group . We say that G is *semisimple* if $G \neq \{1\}$ and $R(G) = \{1\}$. We say that G is *reductive* if

$G \neq \{1\}$ and $R_u(G) = \{1\}$.

Suppose G is a connected reductive group . Then the commutator subgroup G' of G is closed , connected , and semisimple if G is not abelian . If we denote by Z^0 the connected component of the center $Z(G)$ of G , then Z^0 is a torus , and we have a factorization $G = G'Z^0$ with $G' \wedge Z^0$ finite .

If G is a connected semisimple group , then G has a finite set of closed , connected , normal subgroups $G_1 ,...,G_k$ such that

(i) each G_i is a simple algebraic group ,

(ii) $[G_i , G_j] = \{1\}$ if $i \neq j$,

(iii) $G = G_1 \cdots G_k$,

(iv) $G_i \wedge (G_1 \cdots G_{i-1} G_{i+1} \cdots G_k)$ is finite for each i .

(a *simple algebraic group* is a non-commutative algebraic group which has no proper closed connected normal subgroups) ($[C_2]$ § 1.8).

The study of the structure of semisimple groups is therefore largely reduced to the study of simple algebraic groups . If G is a simple algebraic group , and we denote by Z its (finite) center , then G/Z is simple as an abstract group ([Hu] Corollary 29.5). In particular G is a perfect group (i.e. $G = G'$) . For the classification of simple algebraic groups , see $[C_2]$ § 1.11 .

We finally introduce the concept of a Borel subgroup of an algebraic group . Let G be an algebraic group . A *Borel subgroup* of G is a maximal closed connected solvable subgroup of G .

We summarise some of the properties of Borel subgroups .

All Borel subgroups are conjugate under G ([Hu] Theorem 21.3).

The maximal tori of G are those of the Borel subgroups of G , and they are all conjugate ([Hu] Corollary 21.3A) . The *rank* of an algebraic group is then defined to be the dimension of its maximal tori .

We have $\mathcal{N}(B) = B$ for every Borel subgroup of G ([Hu] Theorem 23.1).

If we denote by U the unipotent radical $R_u(B)$ (= B_u) of a Borel subgroup

B , then we have $\mathcal{N}(U) = B$ ([Hu] Corollary 23.1D) .

Let G be an algebraic group . A *parabolic subgroup* of G is any subgroup of G containing a Borel subgroup of G (parabolic subgroups are usually defined to be the closed subgroups containing a Borel subgoup , but it turns out , from the theory of groups with BN-pairs , as algebraic reductive groups are , that the closed subgroups containing a Borel subgroup are exactly all the subgroups containing a Borel subgroup . Then one proves that this is true for every algebraic group). We have $\mathcal{N}(P) = P$ for every parabolic subgroup of G ([Hu] Theorem 29.3(c)) .

Let G be a connected algebraic group , and let T be a maximal torus of G. Then the group $W(T) = \mathcal{N}(T)/\mathcal{C}(T)$ is finite ([C_2] § 1.9), and it is determined up to isomorphism by G , as any two maximal tori are conjugate . The abstract group W isomorphic to W(T) is called the Weyl group of G . If G is reductive , then we have $\mathcal{C}(T) = T$, and so $W(T) = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$. We shall always write W instead of W(T) .

Let us denote by X the group of all algebraic homomorphisms from T into K^* . Then X can be made into a group by defining

$(\chi_1+\chi_2)(t) = \chi_1(t)\chi_2(t)$ for every χ_1 , χ_2 in X , every t in T .

X is called the *character group* of T . If the dimension of T is k , then X is a free abelian group of rank k . Similarly we can define the *cocharacter group* Y of T to be the group of all algebraic homomorphisms of K^* into T . Y can be made into a group by defining

$(\gamma_1+\gamma_2)(\lambda) = \gamma_1(\lambda)\gamma_2(\lambda)$ for every γ_1 , γ_2 in Y , every λ in K^* .

Then Y is a free abelian group of rank k .

Let α be an algebraic endomorphism of K^*. Then there exists a unique n in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that α has the form $\lambda \mapsto \lambda^n$ for every λ in K^* . Hence we can define a map $X \times Y \to \mathbb{Z}$ by sending (χ,γ) to the unique integer $\langle\chi,\gamma\rangle$ such that $(\chi\gamma)(\lambda) = \lambda^{\langle\chi,\gamma\rangle}$ for every λ in K^* .

This map is non-degenerate , and gives rise to a duality between X and Y (i.e. $X \cong \mathrm{Hom}(Y,\mathbb{Z})$ and $Y \cong \mathrm{Hom}(X,\mathbb{Z})$). We make the Weyl group act both on X and on Y by defining

$${}^w\chi(t) = \chi(t^w) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \gamma^w(\lambda) = \gamma(\lambda)^w$$

for every χ in X , t in T , γ in Y and λ in K^* ($[C_2]$ § 1.9) .

Let G be a connected reductive group . Let T be a maximal torus of G and B be a Borel subgroup of G containing T . As B is solvable , it has the semidirect decomposition $B = UT$, where $U = B_u$. There exists a unique Borel subgroup B^- in G such that $B \wedge B^- = T$ ([Hu] Corollary 26.2C and the following exercise 6) . Also for B^- we have the semidirect decomposition $B^- = U^-T$, where $U^- = (B^-)_u$. U and U^- are closed and connected maximal unipotent subgroups of G normalised by T , and satisfying $U \wedge U^- = \{1\}$. We consider the minimal non-trivial closed connected subgroups of U and U^- which are normalised by T . These are all 1-dimensional , and isomorphic to K . We therefore have an action of T on the algebraic group K , and so each of our 1-dimensional unipotent groups determines an element of the character group X of T , as the group of algebraic automorphisms of K is isomorphic to K^* . The elements of X arising in this way are called the *roots* of G relative to T . The roots form a finite subset Φ of X . For every root α in Φ the 1-dimensional unipotent subgroup giving rise to α is denoted by X_α , and it is called a *root-subgroup* of G . For every α in Φ there exists an algebraic isomorphism $x_\alpha : K \longrightarrow X_\alpha$ such that we have

$$t x_\alpha(k) t^{-1} = x_\alpha(\alpha(t)k) \qquad \text{for every } k \text{ in } K .$$

([Hu] Theorem 26.3) . Whenever we consider root-subgroups X_α , we shall always assume already fixed the isomorphisms x_α .

Let Φ^+ be the set of roots arising from subgroups of U , and let Φ^- be the set of roots arising from subgroups of U^- . The roots in Φ^- are the negative of the roots in Φ^+ . Φ^+ is called the set of positive roots and Φ^- is called the set of negative roots . Let $\Pi = \{\alpha_1,...,\alpha_\ell\}$ be the set of positive roots which are not the sum of two positive roots . Π is called a *fundamental system* of Φ , and the elements of Π are called the *simple roots* . Each root α in Φ^+ is of the form $\alpha = n_1\alpha_1+...+n_\ell\alpha_\ell$, where each n_i is a non-negative integer . The *height* $ht(\alpha)$ of α is defined to be the integer $n_1+...+n_\ell$. Every root is the image of a simple root under the action of an element of W . Also , W contains a unique element w_0 such that $w_0(\Phi^+) = (\Phi^-)$. w_0 has order 2 .

There are several equivalent definitions of roots . It turns out that the set Φ is independent of the particular Borel subgroup B containing T , while choosing a Borel subgroup containing T is equivalent to choosing a fundamental system Π of Φ (or , equivalently , a set of positive roots Φ^+ of Φ) ([Hu] § 27.3) .

Every root α determines uniquely an element $\alpha^\vee$ of Y and an involution w_α of W . $\alpha^\vee$ is called the coroot corresponding to α, and w_α the reflection corresponding to α . We have $<\alpha,\alpha^\vee> = 2$ ($[C_2]$ § 1.9) .

Let now B be a Borel subgroup containing T , and let $\Pi = \{\alpha_1,...,\alpha_\ell\}$ be the fundamental system associated to B . The elements w_{α_i} of W will be called fundamental reflections , and will be denoted by s_i . W is generated as a Coxeter group by the set $\{s_1,...,s_\ell\}$, i.e. if m_{ij} is the order of s_is_j for $i \neq j$, we have

$$W = < s_1,...,s_\ell \mid s_i^2 = 1 \ \forall i , (s_is_j)^{m_{ij}} = 1 \ \text{ for } i \neq j > .$$

Let w be in W . Then a reduced expression for w is an expression

$$w = s_{i_1} \cdots s_{i_k} ,$$

whose length k is as small as possible . k will be called the *length* $\ell(w)$ of w . w_0 is the longest element of W .

We illustrate the above described situation by considering the group $SL_n(K)$. We may take T to be the subgroup of diagonal matrices in $SL_n(K)$. We may take B to be the subgroup of upper-triangular matrices . Then U is the subgroup of upper-unitriangular matrices. We also have for B^- the subgroup of lower-triangular matrices and for U^- the subgroup of lower-unitriangular matrices. The minimal proper subgoups of U normalized by T are the subgroups

$$X_{\alpha_{ij}} = \{ I + \lambda E_{ij} \mid \lambda \in K \}$$

(where E_{ij} is the elementary matrix with 1 in the (i,j) position and zero elsewhere) for $i < j$. The minimal proper subgoups of U^- normalized by T are the subgroups $X_{\alpha_{ij}}$ for $i > j$. The roots are the elements α_{ij} given by

$$\mathrm{diag}\,(\lambda_1,\dots,\lambda_n) \mapsto \lambda_i\lambda_j^{-1} \quad \text{for } i \neq j .$$

We have $\Phi^+ = \{ \alpha_{ij} \mid i<j \}$ and $\Phi^- = \{ \alpha_{ij} \mid i>j \}$. The fundamental system Π is the set $\{ \alpha_{12},\dots,\alpha_{n-1,n} \}$. For each root α_{ij} the corresponding coroot $\alpha_{ij}^\vee$ is the element given by

$$\lambda \mapsto \mathrm{diag}\,(1,\dots,1,\underset{i}{\lambda},1,\dots,\underset{j}{\lambda^{-1}},1,\dots,1) .$$

The normalizer N of T is the subgroup of monomial matrices in $SL_n(K)$. Thus the Weyl group W will be isomorphic to the symmetric group S_n. For each root α_{ij} the corresponding reflection $w_{\alpha_{ij}}$ is the permutation which transposes i,j and fixes the remaining symbols.

Let G be a semisimple group, and let $\Pi = \{\alpha_1,\dots,\alpha_\ell\}$ be a fundamental system of roots of G. We define the *Cartan integer* A_{ij} to be the integer $\langle\alpha_j,\alpha_i^\vee\rangle$ for every i,j. The matrix $A = (A_{ij})_{ij}$ is called the *Cartan matrix*. We have $A_{ii} = 2$ for every i, and $A_{ij} \in \{0,-1,-2,-3\}$ if $i \neq j$. If $A_{ij} \in \{-2,-3\}$, then $A_{ji} = -1$. Moreover we have

$$A_{ij} = 0 \iff A_{ji} = 0 .$$

Let us denote by n_{ij} the product $A_{ij}\,A_{ji}$. Then $n_{ij} \in \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$. n_{ij} is connected with the order m_{ij} of the element s_is_j of W. We have

$$n_{ij} = 0 \iff m_{ij} = 2 ,$$
$$n_{ij} = 1 \iff m_{ij} = 3 ,$$
$$n_{ij} = 2 \iff m_{ij} = 4 ,$$
$$n_{ij} = 3 \iff m_{ij} = 6 .$$

We define the *Dynkin diagram* of G . This is a graph with ℓ nodes , one for each simple root α_i . The nodes corresponding to the roots α_i , α_j for $i \neq j$ are joined by n_{ij} bonds . If $n_{ij} = 2$ or 3 then we place an arrow pointing from α_i to α_j if $A_{ji} \neq -1$ ($[C_2]$ § 1.11).

A connected semisimple group is simple if and only if its Dynkin diagram is connected . A simple group is determined by its Dynkin diagram and the location of the character group X between the *root lattice* $\mathbb{Z}\Phi$ and the *weight lattice* $\Omega = \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}\Phi^{\vee}, \mathbb{Z})$. G is called *adjoint* if $X = \mathbb{Z}\Phi$, and *simply-connected* if $X = \Omega$ (i.e. if $Y = \mathbb{Z}\Phi^{\vee}$) . If G_{ad} and G_{sc} are the adjoint and the simply-connected simple groups with the same Dynkin diagram as G , then there exist surjective algebraic homomorphisms

$G_{sc} \longrightarrow G$ and $G \longrightarrow G_{ad}$.

The kernels of these homomorphisms are finite and central . The kernel of the latter map is equal to the center of G ($[C_2]$ § 1.11) .

If G is a semisimple group , and T is any maximal torus of G , then Z(G) coincides with the subgroup

$\{ t \in T \mid \alpha(t) = 1 \text{ for every } \alpha \text{ in } \Phi \}$,

of T , where Φ is the set of roots of G relative to T ([St] page 43) .

For the definition of diagonal , graph and field automorphisms of a semisimple group , we refer to [St] § 10 .

We finally recall the striking result that if G is a connected algebraic group , then G has a unique class of maximal unipotent subgroups , namely the unipotent radicals of the Borel subgroups of G ([Hu] Theorem 30.4(b) and the following remark) .

We shall now shortly summarise the results we are going to prove in this dissertation .

The main result of this thesis is that if p is an odd prime, then every autoprojectivity of a simple algebraic group G over $\bar{\mathbf{F}}_p$, not of type A_2, is induced by a unique automorphism of G. We prove this first for groups of rank at least 3 (Theorem 4.6.5.), and then we treat the case of rank 1 (here with no restrictions on p) and 2 (case A_2 excluded) with different arguments (Corollary 5.2.6., 5.3.8.).

In the last chapter we prove that in fact A_2 represents an exception, by exhibiting a family of autoprojectivities of the group $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$ which are not induced by any automorphism of $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$ (Corollary 6.4.15.).

Chapter 2 Lattice automorphisms of reductive algebraic groups

In this chapter we consider a connected reductive algebraic group over the field $\bar{\mathbb{F}}_p$ where p is any prime. We shall show that the group Aut $\mathcal{L}(G)$ acts in a natural way on the building $\Delta(G)$ canonically associated to G and we shall start studying this action.

We first give some notation that we shall use throughout the whole thesis. Let p be any prime. We shall always denote by K the algebraic closure of the field $\mathbb{F}_p$. Also, for every natural number n, we shall denote by K_n the unique subfield of K of order $p^{n!}$. Hence we have

$K_n \leq K_{n+1}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$, and

$\bigcup_{n\in\mathbb{N}} K_n = K$.

§ 2.1 Index-preserving projectivities.

In this paragraph we shall show that if G is a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K and φ is a projectivity of G onto a group $\bar{G}$, then φ is strictly index-preserving.

For the purpose, we shall construct a family $(G_n)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ of finite subgroups of G such that $\bigcup_{n\in\mathbb{N}} G_n = G$ and each G_n has the property that every projectivity of G_n is strictly index-preserving.

Proposition 2.1.1. Let X be an affine variety defined over K. Then there exists a finite subfield F of K such that X is defined over F.

Proof: We have $X \subseteq K^m$ for some m in $\mathbb{N}$. The vanishing ideal $\mathcal{J}(X)$ of X in $K[X_1,\ldots,X_m]$ is finitely generated, by $f_1,\ldots,f_r$, say. But then there exists a finite subfield F of K such that $f_1,\ldots,f_r$ are all in $F[X_1,\ldots,X_m]$. Hence X is defined over F ([Hu] Proposition 34.1). #

We start now by supposing that G is a simple algebraic group over K. By the previous proposition, there exists a natural number $\bar{n}$ such that G is defined over $K_{\bar{n}}$. Then, for every $n \geq \bar{n}$, we can consider the finite subgroup $G(K_n)$ of the K_n-rational points of G. Also, we can take $\bar{n}$ large enough such that the derived group $G(K_n)'$ is perfect for every $n \geq \bar{n}$ ([T_1] Main theorem and Proposition 1.4).

We define $L_n = G(K_{\bar{n}+n-1})'$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$.

<u>Proposition 2.1.2.</u> Let G be a simple algebraic group defined over K, and let $(L_n)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ be the family of subgroups of G defined above. Then we have the following:

L_n is a perfect finite subgroup of G for every n in $\mathbb{N}$;

$L_n \leq L_{n+1}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$;

$\bigcup_{n\in\mathbb{N}} L_n = G$.

<u>Proof</u>: From the definition of L_n, it follows that L_n is finite and perfect for every n in $\mathbb{N}$. Also, for every $n \geq \bar{n}$ we have $K_n \leq K_{n+1}$ and so $G(K_n) \leq G(K_{n+1})$. Hence we have

$L_n = G(K_{\bar{n}+n-1})' \leq G(K_{\bar{n}+n})' = L_{n+1}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$.

Finally let x be in G. As G is perfect, there exists elements $a_1,\dots,a_r,b_1,\dots,b_r$ in G such that $x = [a_1,b_1]\dots[a_r,b_r]$. From the fact that $\bigcup_{n\geq\bar{n}} K_n = K$, it follows that $\bigcup_{n\geq\bar{n}} G(K_n) = G$. Hence there exists M in $\mathbb{N}_0$ such that $a_1,\dots,a_r,b_1,\dots,b_r$ are all in $G(K_{\bar{n}+M})$. But then x lies in $G(K_{\bar{n}+(M+1)-1})' = L_{M+1}$, and we are done. #

Suppose now that G is a connected semisimple algebraic group over K. Then, from the structure of semisimple algebraic groups, we have:

$G = N_1 \cdots N_t$ where N_i is a simple algebraic group for every $i = 1,\dots,t$

$[N_r,N_s] = \{1\}$ for every r, s in $\{1,\dots,t\}$, $r \neq s$.

From Proposition 2.1.2. , for every $i = 1,\dots,t$ we have a family $(H_{i,j})_{j\in\mathbb{N}}$ of finite perfect subgroups of N_i , such that

$H_{i,j} \leq H_{i,j+1}$ for every j in $\mathbb{N}$, and

$\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{N}} H_{i,j} = N_i$.

Let us denote by H_j the product $H_{1,j} \cdots H_{t,j}$, for every j in $\mathbb{N}$. Then H_j is a finite subgroup of G , as $[N_r,N_s] = \{1\}$ for every r , s in $\{1,\dots,t\}$, $r \neq s$. We have the following

Proposition 2.1.3. Let G be a connected semisimple algebraic group over K , and let $(H_j)_{j\in\mathbb{N}}$ be the family of subgroups of G defined above . Then

H_n is a perfect finite subgroup of G for every n in $\mathbb{N}$;

$H_n \leq H_{n+1}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$;

$\bigcup_{n\in\mathbb{N}} H_n = G$.

Proof : Clearly each H_j is finite and perfect , being the product of finite perfect groups. The remaining statements come immediately from Proposition 2.1.2. . #

We finally assume that G is a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K . Then we have $G = T G'$, where T is the connected component of the centre $Z(G)$ of G , and the derived subgroup G' of G is semisimple . For G' we can then consider the family $(H_j)_{j\in\mathbb{N}}$ of Proposition 2.1.3. . On the other hand , T is a torus , and so it is isomorphic to the direct product of a finite number , k say , of copies of the multiplicative group K^* of K . Let n be any natural number coprime to p . Then K^* has a unique subgroup of order n . Call this subgroup D_n . For every j in $\mathbb{N}$, let $p^{\alpha_j} r_j$ be the cardinality of H_j , where $(p,r_j) = 1$. Let us denote by T_j the unique subgroup of T isomorphic to the subgroup $D_{r_j} \times \cdots \times D_{r_j}$ of $K^* \times \cdots \times K^*$ (k copies). Then T_j is a finite subgroup of $Z(G)$, and so the product $T_j H_j$ is a finite subgroup of G, for every j in $\mathbb{N}$. We denote this subgroup by G_j.

<u>Proposition 2.1.4.</u> Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K, and let $(G_j)_{j \in \mathbb{N}}$ be the family of subgroups of G defined above. Then we have

$G_j \leq G_{j+1}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$;

$\bigcup_{j \in \mathbb{N}} G_j = G$.

<u>Proof</u>: As we have $H_j \leq H_{j+1}$, it follows that $r_j \mid r_{j+1}$, and so $T_j \leq T_{j+1}$ for every j in $\mathbb{N}$. Hence $G_j \leq G_{j+1}$ for every j in $\mathbb{N}$. To show that $\bigcup_{j \in \mathbb{N}} G_j = G$, we only need to show that $\bigcup_{j \in \mathbb{N}} G_j \geq T$, as, from Proposition 2.1.3. we have $\bigcup_{j \in \mathbb{N}} H_j = G'$. Now T is a torsion group, whose p-component is the identity. Hence we only need to show that for every natural number r coprime to p, there exists j in $\mathbb{N}$ such that $r \mid |H_j|$. For then we get $r \mid r_j$, and so if t is an element of order r of T then, by construction, t lies in T_j. For the purpose, we consider G'. We have $G' \neq \{1\}$, as G is non-commutative. Hence $G' = N_1 \cdots N_t$, where each N_i is a simple algebraic group. But then, if we take a maximal torus S_1 of N_1, we can find in S_1 an element s of order r. Therefore, with the notation used in the semisimple case, there exists j in $\mathbb{N}$ such that s lies in $H_{1,j}$. Hence we have s in H_j and so $r \mid |H_j|$, as we required. #

<u>Proposition 2.1.5.</u> Let j be any natural number, and let φ be any projectivity of the group G_j. Then φ is index-preserving.

<u>Proof</u>: Let j be in $\mathbb{N}$, and let φ be any projectivity of G_j. Suppose, for a contradiction, that φ is not index-preserving. Then there exists a Sylow r-subgroup R of G_j and a normal complement N of R in G_j, with R cyclic or elementary abelian ([S] Theorem 8 page 45). In particular the group G_j/N

is abelian, and so $N \geq G_j'$. But $G_j \geq H_j \Rightarrow G_j' \geq H_j' = H_j$, as H_j is perfect. Hence $N \geq H_j$, and so $r \nmid |H_j|$ as $r \nmid |N|$. Thus we must have $r \mid |T_j|$, as $G_j = T_j H_j$. But this is a contradiction, because every prime divisor of $|T_j|$ is also a divisor of $|H_j|$ by construction. Therefore φ is index-preserving. ∎

We can now state the following

Theorem 2.1.6. Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K, and let φ be a projectivity of G onto a group $\bar{G}$. Then φ is strictly index-preserving.

Proof: As G is torsion free, it is enough to show that $|\langle g\rangle^{\varphi}| = |\langle g\rangle|$ for every g in G ([Z_2] Corollario 3). So let g be an element of G. By Proposition 2.1.4., there exists j in $\mathbb{N}$, such that g lies in G_j. If we consider the restriction φ_j from $L(G_j)$ to $L(G_j^{\varphi})$ of φ, we get, from Proposition 2.1.5., that φ_j is index-preserving. Hence we have

$$|\langle g\rangle^{\varphi}| = |\langle g\rangle^{\varphi_j}| = |\langle g\rangle| ,$$

and we are done. ∎

In [Z_2] Zacher also proved that a projectivity is strictly index-preserving if and only if it is index-preserving. For the rest of the thesis we shall therefore always write for convenience index-preserving to refer to a projectivity with the property of being strictly index-preserving.

Note: We excluded the case when G is an abelian connected reductive group, i.e. when G is a torus. We shall deal with this case in Chapter 5.

§ 2.2 The group Aut $\mathcal{L}(G)$ acts on the set of all Borel subgroups of G .

In this paragraph we consider a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group G over K , and an autoprojectivity φ of G . We shall show that if B is a Borel subgroup of G , then B^{φ} is another Borel subgroup of G . It will follow that the group Aut $\mathcal{L}(G)$ of all autoprojectivities of G acts in a natural way on the building $\Delta(G)$ canonically associated to G .

First we recall that in our case an element x of G is unipotent (resp. semisimple) if and only if x has order a power of p (resp. x has order coprime to p) . From Theorem 2.1.6. we have the following

Proposition 2.2.1. Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K , and let φ be an autoprojectivity of G . Let x , x_1 be elements of G such that $\langle x\rangle^{\varphi} = \langle x_1\rangle$. Then

x is unipotent (resp. semisimple) if and only if x_1 is unipotent (resp. semisimple) . ∎

Our aim is to show that if B is a Borel subgroup of G , then B^{φ} is a Borel subgroup , too . For the purpose we shall make use of the decomposition of B as the semidirect product of its unipotent radical and a maximal torus . We recall that in a reductive algebraic group there is a unique conjugacy class of maximal unipotent subgroups , which are precisely the unipotent radicals of the Borel subgroups of G ([Hu] Theorem 30.4b) .

Proposition 2.2.2. Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K , and let φ be an autoprojectivity of G . Let U be a unipotent subgroup of G. Then U^{φ} is a unipotent subgroup of G . If U is maximal unipotent , then also U^{φ} is maximal unipotent .

Proof : Let U be a unipotent subgroup of G , and let x_1 be an element of U^{φ} . Then there exists x in U such that $\langle x\rangle^{\varphi} = \langle x_1\rangle$, because φ maps cyclic groups to cyclic groups . Then x is unipotent , and so is x_1 by Proposition 2.2.1. . Hence U^{φ} is a unipotent subgroup of G . Now suppose U is maximal unipotent , and let M be any unipotent subgroup of G containing U^{φ} . Then , by the first part of the proposition , $M^{\varphi^{-1}}$ is unipotent , and it contains U . But U is maximal unipotent , hence we have $M^{\varphi^{-1}} = U$, which gives $M = U^{\varphi}$. Therefore U^{φ} is a maximal unipotent subgroup of G . ∎

<u>Lemma 2.2.3.</u> Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K , and let φ be an autoprojectivity of G . Let A be an abelian subgroup of G such that each element of A is semisimple and such that A has no proper subgroup of finite index . Then the closure $cl(A^{\varphi})$ of A^{φ} in G is a torus of G .

<u>Proof</u> : Let C be the closure of A^{φ} in G . We shall show that C is connected . As the connected component C° of C has finite index in C , it follows that $A^{\varphi} \wedge C^{\circ}$ has finite index , n say , in A^{φ} . We want to show that $n = 1$. Suppose on the contrary that $n > 1$. Then there exists a maximal subgroup M_1 of A^{φ} containing $A^{\varphi} \wedge C^{\circ}$. Hence $M = M_1^{\varphi^{-1}}$ is a maximal subgroup of A . But A is abelian , and so M must have finite index in A , which is a contradiction , as A has no proper subgroup of finite index by hypothesis . So we get $n = 1$, i. e. $A^{\varphi} \wedge C^{\circ} = A^{\varphi}$. Hence we have $A^{\varphi} \leq C^{\circ}$. But C° is closed , and so we get $C = cl(A^{\varphi}) \leq C^{\circ}$, which leaves us with $C = C^{\circ}$. Therefore C is connected . On the other hand , C is soluble because the projective image of a soluble group is soluble ([Y]) and the closure of a soluble subgroup is soluble ([B] Cor. 2 on page 110) . Hence , from the structure theorem of connected soluble algebraic groups , we get $C = C_u \rtimes T$, where C_u is the set of all unipotent elements of C , and T is a maximal torus of C . We have $A^{\varphi} \wedge C_u = \{1\}$, as A^{φ} consists only of semisimple elements by Proposition 2.2.1. . Hence we get

$$A^{\varphi} \cong A^{\varphi} C_u / C_u \leq T C_u / C_u \cong T \; ,$$

which implies that A^{φ} is abelian (Note : we could also get this result from the structure of locally finite modular groups) . Therefore C is itself abelian ,

as the closure of an abelian subgroup is abelian ([B] (2.1) d) . So , if we denote by C_s the set of all semisimple elements of C , from the structure theorem of abelian connected algebraic groups , we get $C = C_u \times C_s$, where C_s is a torus . We are now able to conclude by observing that , as the elements of A^φ are semisimple , we have $A^\varphi \leq C_s$, and so
$C = cl(A^\varphi) \leq C_s$. Hence $C = C_s$, and C is a torus . ∎

Proposition 2.2.4. Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K , and let φ be an autoprojectivity of G . Let T be a maximal torus of G . Then T^φ is a maximal torus of G .

Proof : T is isomorphic to a direct product of copies of K^* , and so it is a divisible group , as K^* is a divisible group . Hence T has no proper subgroup of finite index . By Lemma 2.2.3. the closure of T^φ in G is a torus of G . Let us denote by T_1 this closure . The hypothesis of Lemma 2.2.3. holds for this group T_1 , and so $cl(T_1^{\varphi^{-1}})$ is a torus of G containing T . But T is a maximal torus of G , thus we have $cl(T_1^{\varphi^{-1}}) = T$. Also

$$T = cl(T_1^{\varphi^{-1}}) \geq T_1^{\varphi^{-1}} \geq T$$

gives $T_1^{\varphi^{-1}} = T$, so that $T_1 = T^\varphi$. Hence T^φ is closed in G , and it is a torus . Now suppose S is a torus of G containing T^φ . Then again $cl(S^{\varphi^{-1}})$ is a torus of G containing T , and so we must have $cl(S^{\varphi^{-1}}) = T$, as T is maximal . Hence we get

$$T = cl(S^{\varphi^{-1}}) \geq S^{\varphi^{-1}} \geq T ,$$

and therefore $T = S^{\varphi^{-1}}$. So $S = T^\varphi$, and T^φ is a maximal torus of G . ∎

We finally can consider the behaviour of Borel subgroups under autoprojectivities.

Proposition 2.2.5. Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K , and let φ be an autoprojectivity of G . Let B be a Borel subgroup of G . Then B^φ is a Borel subgroup of G .

Proof : We have $B = UT$, where U is the unipotent radical of B , and T is any maximal torus of B . Then U is a maximal unipotent subgroup of G and T is a maximal torus of G ([Hu] Corollary A on page 135) . By Proposition 2.2.2. U^φ is a maximal unipotent subgroup of G and so it is the unipotent radical of a certain Borel subgroup of G . In particular U^φ is a closed and connected subgroup of G . On the other hand T^φ is a maximal torus of G by Proposition 2.2.4. , hence T^φ is closed and connected as well . Therefore the subgroup generated by U^φ and T^φ is closed and connected ([Hu] Proposition 7.5) . Thus $B^\varphi = U^\varphi \vee T^\varphi$ is a closed and connected subgroup of G . By definition , a Borel subgroup of G is a maximal closed connected soluble subgroup of G , and it is well known that a Borel subgroup of G is maximal even in the family of soluble subgroups of G ([Hu] Corollary A on page 143) . From this it follows that B^φ is a maximal soluble subgroup of G , as a projective image of a soluble group is soluble . In particular B^φ is a maximal soluble closed connected subgroup of G , and so it is a Borel subgroup of G . #

We conclude this paragraph with the following

<u>Theorem 2.2.6.</u> Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K . Then the group Aut $\mathcal{L}(G)$ of all autoprojectivities of G acts in a natural way on the building $\Delta(G)$ canonically associated to G , in the sense that every autoprojectivity φ of G induces an automorphism of $\Delta(G)$.
<u>Proof</u> : We recall that the elements of $\Delta(G)$ are all the parabolic subgroups of G and that the partial order on $\Delta(G)$ is the reverse of the set-inclusion . Let now φ be an autoprojectivity of G . From Proposition 2.2.5., it is clear that φ induces a permutation on the set $\mathfrak{B}$ of all Borel subgroups of G . As the characteristic of φ is to preserve inclusions , it follows that φ permutes all the elements of $\Delta(G)$ and that it induces an automorphism of $\Delta(G)$. #

We get therefore a homomorphism from Aut $\mathcal{L}(G)$ to Aut $\Delta(G)$. Our aim is to study in detail this homomorphism .

§ 2.3 The action of Aut $\mathcal{L}(G)$ on the Weyl group of G .

In this paragraph we start studying the action of Aut $\mathcal{L}(G)$ on $\Delta(G)$. We shall fix a Borel subgroup B of G and a maximal torus T of B , and we shall restrict our investigation to the autoprojectivities of G fixing both B and T . We shall show that these autoprojectivities act on the Weyl group and on the Dynkin diagram of G .

We start with the following

Proposition 2.3.1. Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K . Let T be any maximal torus of G and let φ be an autoprojectivity of G . Then we have

$\mathcal{N}(T)^{\varphi} = \mathcal{N}(T^{\varphi})$.

Proof : As T is a torus , it has no proper subgroup of finite index . Hence , from $T \triangleleft \mathcal{N}(T)$, it follows that $T^{\varphi} \triangleleft \mathcal{N}(T)^{\varphi}$ ([Z_2] Corollario 2) . Thus we have

(∗) $\mathcal{N}(T)^{\varphi} \leq \mathcal{N}(T^{\varphi})$.

Let $S = T^{\varphi}$. Then S is another maximal torus of G by Proposition 2.2.4. . We can apply (∗) to the couple (S , φ^{-1}) to get $\mathcal{N}(S)^{\varphi^{-1}} \leq \mathcal{N}(S^{\varphi^{-1}})$, which gives $\mathcal{N}(S) \leq \mathcal{N}(T)^{\varphi}$. Hence we obtain

$\mathcal{N}(S) \leq \mathcal{N}(T)^{\varphi} \leq \mathcal{N}(T^{\varphi}) = \mathcal{N}(S)$,

which leaves us with $\mathcal{N}(T)^{\varphi} = \mathcal{N}(T^{\varphi})$. #

From the previous proposition , given any maximal torus T of G and any autoprojectivity φ of G , we can define a projectivity

$\phi : \mathcal{N}(T)/T \longrightarrow \mathcal{N}(T^{\varphi})/T^{\varphi}$,

by the definition $(L/T)^{\phi} = L^{\varphi}/T^{\varphi}$, for every subgroup L such that $T \leq L \leq \mathcal{N}(T)$. We shall apply this to the case when $T^{\varphi} = T$, to obtain an autoprojectivity of $\mathcal{N}(T)/T$.

We fix now a Borel subgroup B of the connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group G over K and a maximal torus T of B.

Lemma 2.3.2. Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K. Let φ be any autoprojectivity of G, and let B and T be as above. Then there exists an element g in G such that

$B^{\varphi} = B^{g}$ and $T^{\varphi} = T^{g}$.

Proof : From Proposition 2.2.5., B^{φ} is a Borel subgroup of G. As all Borel subgroups of G are conjugate in G, there exists an element x in G such that $B^{\varphi} = B^{x}$. Now $(T^{\varphi})^{x^{-1}}$ is a maximal torus of G contained in $(B^{\varphi})^{x^{-1}} = B$. So there exists an element b in B such that $(T^{\varphi})^{x^{-1}} = T^{b}$, as all maximal tori of B are conjugate in B. Let g be the element bx of G. Then we have

$$B^{\varphi} = B^{x} = B^{bx} = B^{g} \text{ and } T^{\varphi} = (T^{\varphi})^{x^{-1}x} = T^{bx} = T^{g},$$

and we are done. #

Therefore, given any autoprojectivity φ of G, we can adjust φ by an inner automorphism of G in order to fix both B and T.

We give the following

Definition 2.3.3. Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K. For any couple (B,T), where B is a Borel subgroup of G and T is a maximal torus of B, we define $\Gamma_{B,T}$ to be the group of all autoprojectivities of G fixing B and T. #

We recall that once we fixed a maximal torus T of G, then we have the set Φ of the roots of G relative to T. Also, choosing a Borel subgroup B of G containing T, corresponds to choosing an order in Φ, so that we can define Φ^{+} to be the set of positive roots of Φ, and Φ^{-} to be the set of negative roots of Φ. We also denote by Π the set of simple roots. If we have

$\Pi = \{\alpha_1,...,\alpha_\ell\}$ then , for every root α in Φ , we have $\alpha = n_1\alpha_1+...+n_\ell\alpha_\ell$, where all n_i's are non-negative integers if α is in Φ^+, and all n_i's are non-positive integers if α is in Φ^- . Finally we denote by X_α the root-subgroup of G corresponding to the root α , for every α in Φ.

As we noted before , given an autoprojectivity φ fixing T , we can define an autoprojectivity $\bar{\varphi}$ of the Weyl group $W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$ of G .

Proposition 2.3.4. Let φ be any autoprojectivity of G fixing T . Then the autoprojectivity $\bar{\varphi}$ of W induced by φ is index-preserving .

Proof : This follows from the fact that φ is strictly index-preserving , as we proved in Proposition 2.1.6. . #

At this point we recall that W is a Coxeter group , and we let

$$W = < s_1,...,s_\ell \mid s_i^2 = 1 \ \forall i , (s_is_j)^{m_{ij}} = 1 \ \text{ for } i \neq j >$$

be the presentation of W as a Coxeter group relative to the choice of the Borel subgroup B containing T . Then , if φ lies in $\Gamma_{B,T}$, from Proposition 2.3.4. , for every $i = 1,...,\ell$, there exists a unique involution $\bar{s}_i$ in W such that $<s_i>^{\bar{\varphi}} = <\bar{s}_i>$ for every $i = 1,...,\ell$, as $\bar{\varphi}$ maps cyclic groups to cyclic groups .

Proposition 2.3.5. Let i,j be in $\{1,...,\ell\}$, $i \neq j$. Then $|\bar{s}_i \bar{s}_j| = |s_i s_j|$ ($= m_{ij}$) .

Proof : Let us denote by W_{ij} the group generated by s_i and s_j , and by $\bar{m}_{ij}$ the order of $\bar{s}_i \bar{s}_j$. Then we have $W_{ij}^{\bar{\varphi}} = <s_i ,s_j>^{\bar{\varphi}} = <\bar{s}_i , \bar{s}_j>$. Hence both W_{ij} and $W_{ij}^{\bar{\varphi}}$ are dihedral groups , and they are of the same order by Proposition 2.3.4. . But we have

$$|W_{ij}| = 2m_{ij} \quad \text{and} \quad |W_{ij}^{\bar{\varphi}}| = 2\bar{m}_{ij} .$$

Hence we must have have $\bar{m}_{ij} = m_{ij}$ and we are done . #

We consider now the minimal parabolic subgroups of G containing B .

For every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$ let us fix a representative n_i in $\mathcal{N}(T)$ of s_i. Then the minimal parabolic subgroups of G containing B are $P_1,\dots,P_\ell$, where $P_i = \langle B, n_i \rangle$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$. Also, for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$ let $\bar{n}_i$ be an element of $\mathcal{N}(T)$ such that $\langle n_i\rangle^\varphi = \langle \bar{n}_i\rangle$. We therefore have

$$P_i^\varphi = \langle B, \bar{n}_i \rangle$$

for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$. We have the following

Proposition 2.3.6. There exists a permutation σ of the set $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$ such that for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$ we have $P_i^\varphi = P_{\sigma_i}$ and $\bar{s}_i = s_{\sigma_i}$.

Proof : Let i be an element of $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$. Let us denote by w_i the element $T\bar{n}_i$ of W, and let $w_i = s_{j_1}\cdots s_{j_k}$ be a reduced expression for w_i. Then if we denote by J the set $\{j_1,\dots,j_k\}$, we have $\langle B, \bar{n}_i \rangle = P_J$ ([C_2] Proposition 2.1.5.). But $\langle B, \bar{n}_i\rangle$ is a minimal parabolic subgroup of G containing B, hence J must consist of a single element, σ_i say. Hence we obtain

$$P_i^\varphi = \langle B, n_i \rangle^\varphi = \langle B, \bar{n}_i \rangle = P_J = P_{\sigma_i}.$$

Also, the previous reduced form of w_i must be $w_i = s_{\sigma_i}$. Therefore we get

$$Tn_{\sigma_i} = s_{\sigma_i} = w_i = T\bar{n}_i,$$

and so

$$\langle s_i\rangle^\phi = \langle Tn_i\rangle^\phi = \langle T, n_i\rangle^\varphi/T = \langle T, \bar{n}_i\rangle/T = \langle T\bar{n}_i\rangle = \langle Tn_{\sigma_i}\rangle =$$

$\langle s_{\sigma_i}\rangle$. But we had $\langle s_i\rangle^\phi = \langle \bar{s}_i\rangle$, which leaves us with $\bar{s}_i = s_{\sigma_i}$.

To show that the map $\sigma : \{1,\dots,\ell\} \to \{1,\dots,\ell\}$ is actually a bijection, we only need to observe that if we start with the inverse φ^{-1} of φ, then we can find in a similar way a map $\tau : \{1,\dots,\ell\} \to \{1,\dots,\ell\}$. From the fact that $\varphi\varphi^{-1} = \varphi^{-1}\varphi = 1$, it will then follow that $\sigma\tau = \tau\sigma = 1$, and so σ is bijective. #

We can now apply the previous results to get the following

Proposition 2.3.7. Let G be a connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group over K. Let B be a fixed Borel subgroup of G, and T be a maximal torus of B. Then every autoprojectivity of G fixing B and T induces a symmetry of the Dynkin diagram of G, if arrows are disregarded.

Proof : We recall that the Dynkin diagram of G is a graph with ℓ nodes, one for each simple root α_i. The nodes corresponding to the roots α_i, α_j with $i \neq j$ are joined by n_{ij} bonds, where n_{ij} depends only on the order m_{ij} of s_is_j. (The arrows depend on the Cartan integers A_{ij}, but here we are interested in the diagram without arrows). Let now φ be an autoprojectivity of G fixing B and T. Then, from Proposition 2.3.6., we have a permutation σ of $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$ such that $\bar{s}_i = s_{\sigma_i}$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$, where $\bar{s}_i$ is the unique involution of $W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$ such that $< s_i >^{\varphi} = < \bar{s}_i >$. Also, from Proposition 2.3.5., we get

$$m_{\sigma_i\sigma_j} = | s_{\sigma_i} s_{\sigma_j} | = | \bar{s}_i \bar{s}_j | = | s_i s_j | = m_{ij} .$$

In particular we have $n_{\sigma_i\sigma_j} = n_{ij}$, and so we obtain a symmetry of the Dynkin diagram of G if arrows are disregarded. #

We shall denote by $\bar{\sigma}$ the symmetry of the Dynkin diagram induced by φ. In particular we shall have $\bar{\sigma}(\alpha_i) = \alpha_{\sigma_i}$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$.

Note : If instead of considering an autoprojectivity of a given connected reductive non-commutative algebraic group G over K, we consider a projectivity $\varphi : G \longrightarrow G_1$, where G, G_1 are connected reductive non-commutative algebraic groups over K, then with the same argument it is possible to show that if U, T, B are resp. a maximal unipotent subgroup, a maximal torus and a Borel subgroup of G, then U^{φ}, T^{φ} and B^{φ} are resp. a maximal unipotent subgroup, a maximal torus and a Borel subgroup of G_1. Also we still have $\mathcal{N}(T)^{\varphi} = \mathcal{N}(T^{\varphi})$ for every maximal torus T of G.

Now let B be a Borel subgroup of G, and T be a maximal torus of B. We denote by B_1 the Borel subgroup B^{φ} of G_1 and by T_1 the maximal torus T^{φ} of B_1. We can then define a projectivity $\bar{\varphi} : W \longrightarrow W_1$, where $W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$ is the Weyl group of G and $W_1 = \mathcal{N}(T_1)/T_1$ is the Weyl group of G_1. Let

$$W = \langle s_1,\dots,s_\ell \mid s_i^2 = 1 \ \forall i, (s_is_j)^{m_{ij}} = 1 \ \text{for } i \neq j \rangle$$

be the presentation of W as a Coxeter group relative to the choice of the Borel subgroup B containing T, and

$$W_1 = \langle t_1,\dots,t_m \mid t_i^2 = 1 \ \forall i, (t_it_j)^{p_{ij}} = 1 \ \text{for } i \neq j \rangle$$

be the presentation of W_1 as a Coxeter group relative to the choice of the Borel subgroup B_1 containing T_1. Let $\bar{s}_i$ be the unique involution of W_1 such that $\langle s_i \rangle^\varphi = \langle \bar{s}_i \rangle$, for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$. We shall have

(*) $|\bar{s}_i \bar{s}_j| = |s_i s_j|$ for every i, j in $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$, $i \neq j$.

Let $\mathcal{F}$ be the free group on the set $\{x_1, \dots, x_\ell\}$. We then define a homomorphism

$$\eta : \mathcal{F} \longrightarrow W_1$$

by extending the position $x_i \mapsto \bar{s}_i$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$. Then η is surjective, as W is generated by the subgroups $\langle s_1 \rangle, \dots, \langle s_\ell \rangle$, and so W_1 is generated by the subgroups $\langle \bar{s}_1 \rangle, \dots, \langle \bar{s}_\ell \rangle$. Also we have that $\ker \eta$ contains

$$x_i^2 \ \forall i = 1,\dots,\ell, \ (x_ix_j)^{m_{ij}} \ \text{for } i \neq j$$

from (*). Hence we can define a surjective homomorphism $\bar{\eta} : W \longrightarrow W_1$ such that $\bar{\eta}(s_i) = \bar{s}_i$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$. Similarly, starting from $\psi = \varphi^{-1}$, we can define a surjective homomorphism

$$\bar{\vartheta} : W_1 \longrightarrow W$$

such that $\bar{\vartheta}(t_i) = \bar{t}_i$ for every $i = 1,\dots,m$, where $\bar{t}_i$ is the unique involution of W such that $\langle t_i \rangle^\psi = \langle \bar{t}_i \rangle$, for every $i = 1,\dots,m$. Now, considering the minimal parabolic subgroups containing B and B_1, it is possible to define two maps

$$\sigma : \{1,\dots,\ell\} \longrightarrow \{1,\dots,m\} \quad \text{and} \quad \tau : \{1,\dots,m\} \longrightarrow \{1,\dots,\ell\},$$

such that $\bar{s}_i = t_{\sigma_i}$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$ and $\bar{t}_j = s_{\tau_j}$ for every $j = 1,\dots,m$. It turns out that $\sigma\tau = \tau\sigma = 1$, and so $\ell = m$, and $\bar{\eta}$ and $\bar{\vartheta}$ are isomorphisms. In particular G and G_1 have isomorphic Weyl groups. Finally, we note that in the case $G = G_1$, we obtain a homomorphism from the group $\Gamma_{B,T}$ into the group $\mathrm{Aut}\,W$ of all automorphisms of W, given by the map $\varphi \mapsto \bar{\eta}$. ∎

§ 2.4 The action of the group $\Gamma_{B,T}$ on the Dynkin diagram of G.

Our aim is now to show that for every φ in $\Gamma_{B,T}$, there exists a graph automorphism δ of G which induces the same symmetry on the Dynkin diagram as φ does.

From now on we shall assume that G is a simple algebraic group over K. Then, for the existence of the graph automorphism δ we must consider separately the case when G has type B_2, F_4 or G_2. For this purpose we introduce, for every maximal torus T of G, the set $\mathfrak{B}_T$ of all Borel subgroups of G containing T. Then it is well known that

$$\mathfrak{B}_T = \{ B^{\dot{w}} \mid w \in W \},$$

where as usual we denote by $\dot{w}$ any representative of w in $\mathcal{N}(T)$ for every w in $W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$, and B is any fixed Borel subgroup of G containing T. We also have that for any B in $\mathfrak{B}_T$, there exists a unique Borel subgroup B^- such that $B \wedge B^- = T$ ([Hu] Corollary 26.2C and exercise 6 on page 162). In fact we have $B^- = B^{\dot{w}_0}$, where $\dot{w}_0$ is the longest element of W. B^- is called the opposite of B with respect to T.

<u>Proposition 2.4.1.</u> Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. Let φ be an element of $\Gamma_{B,T}$. Then φ induces a permutation of the set $\mathfrak{B}_T$, and it fixes B^-. Moreover, if we denote by U, U^- resp. the unipotent radical of B and of B^-, then φ fixes both U and U^-.

<u>Proof</u>: From Proposition 2.2.5., we know that φ permutes the set of all Borel subgroups of G. But then, if B_1 lies in $\mathfrak{B}_T$, we shall have

$$B_1^{\varphi} \geq T^{\varphi} = T,$$

and so B_1^{φ} lies in $\mathfrak{B}_T$. Hence φ induces a permutation of $\mathfrak{B}_T$. Now we have

$$T = T^{\varphi} = (B \wedge B^-)^{\varphi} = B^{\varphi} \wedge (B^-)^{\varphi} = B \wedge (B^-)^{\varphi}.$$

Therefore we get $(B^-)^{\varphi} = B^-$ because of uniqueness of the opposite. Finally we have $U^{\varphi} = U$ and $(U^-)^{\varphi} = U^-$ because φ is index-preserving. ∎

We shall now show that every element φ of $\Gamma_{B,T}$ permutes the set of root-subgroups of G relative to T. We recall that the root-subgroups X_α are the minimal closed proper subgroups contained in U and U^- which are normalized by T ([C_2] page 18). It turns out that the X_α's are in fact the minimal proper subgroups contained in U and U^- which are normalized by T, because it is possible to show that every subgroup of U normalized by T must be closed and connected (and then the product of the X_α's it contains) ([Ch] Exp. 13, th. 1 d).

<u>Proposition 2.4.2.</u> Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. Let φ be in $\Gamma_{B,T}$, and let V be a unipotent subgroup of G such that T is contained in $\mathcal{N}(V)$. Then T is also contained in $\mathcal{N}(V^\varphi)$.

<u>Proof</u>: Let t be in T and let v be any element of V^φ. Then there exists v_1 in V and t_1 in T such that $\langle v_1\rangle^\varphi = \langle v\rangle$ and $\langle t_1\rangle^\varphi = \langle t\rangle$. By Proposition 2.1.4., there exists n in $\mathbb{N}$ such that v_1, t_1 are in G_n. We put $V_n = V \wedge G_n$. Then we have

$$V_n^{t_1} = (V \wedge G_n)^{t_1} = V^{t_1} \wedge G_n^{t_1} = V \wedge G_n = V_n,$$

so that $V_n \lhd \langle V_n, t_1\rangle$. But p does not divide the order of t_1, therefore V_n is the unique p-Sylow subgroup of $\langle V_n, t_1\rangle$. It follows that V_n^φ must be the unique p-Sylow subgroup of $\langle V_n, t_1\rangle^\varphi = \langle V_n^\varphi, t\rangle$, as φ is index-preserving. Therefore we get

$$V_n^\varphi \lhd \langle V_n^\varphi, t\rangle.$$

In particular we obtain that v^t lies in V_n^φ, as v lies in V_n^φ. So, for every v in V^φ, we proved that v^t lies in V^φ. Hence we have $(V^\varphi)^t \leq V^\varphi$ for every t in T. But then $(V^\varphi)^t = V^\varphi$ for every t in T, and so T is contained in $\mathcal{N}(V^\varphi)$. ∎

<u>Proposition 2.4.3.</u> Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. Let X_α be a root-subgroup of G (w.r.t. the choice of the maximal torus T). Then, for every φ in $\Gamma_{B,T}$, X_α^φ is a root-subgroup of G.

<u>Proof</u> : Let φ be in $\Gamma_{B,T}$. We have $T \leq \mathcal{N}(X_\alpha)$, and so , by Proposition 2.4.2. , we get $T \leq \mathcal{N}(X_\alpha{}^\varphi)$. Also , from $X_\alpha \leq U$ or $X_\alpha \leq U^-$, it follows by Proposition 2.4.1. , that $X_\alpha{}^\varphi \leq U$ or $X_\alpha{}^\varphi \leq U^-$. Now suppose V is a non-trivial subgroup of $X_\alpha{}^\varphi$ such that T is contained in $\mathcal{N}(V)$. Then we have $V^{\varphi^{-1}} \leq X_\alpha$ and , by Proposition 2.4.2. , $T \leq \mathcal{N}(V^{\varphi^{-1}})$. Hence we must have $V^{\varphi^{-1}} = X_\alpha$, as X_α is minimal with respect to the property of being contained in U or U^- and normalized by T . So we get $V = X_\alpha{}^\varphi$, and this means that $X_\alpha{}^\varphi$ is minimal with respect to the property of being contained in U or U^- and normalized by T . Hence $X_\alpha{}^\varphi$ is a root-subgroup of G . ▪

By the previous proposition , given an autoprojectivity φ in $\Gamma_{B,T}$, we can define a map

$\tau : \Phi \longrightarrow \Phi$ such that $X_\alpha{}^\varphi = X_{\tau(\alpha)}$

for every α in Φ .

Similarly , if we start with φ^{-1} , we can define a map $\rho : \Phi \longrightarrow \Phi$ such that $X_\alpha{}^{\varphi^{-1}} = X_{\rho(\alpha)}$, for every α in Φ . It turns out that $\tau\rho = \rho\tau = 1$, and so τ is a bijection . From Proposition 2.4.1. , we also have that $\tau(\Phi^+) = \Phi^+$ and $\tau(\Phi^-) = \Phi^-$.

We recall , from the previous paragraph , that for every φ in $\Gamma_{B,T}$ we have a permutation σ of the set $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$ such that $< s_i >^\varphi = < s_{\sigma_i} >$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$, where $\{ s_1,\dots,s_\ell \}$ is the Coxeter generating set of the Weyl group $\mathcal{N}(T)/T$ with respect to the choice (B,T) . We also recall that , if for any $i = 1,\dots,\ell$ we choose a representative n_i of s_i in $\mathcal{N}(T)$, then the minimal parabolic subgroups containing B are $P_1 ,\dots, P_\ell$, where $P_i = \langle B,n_i \rangle$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$, and that we have $P_i{}^\varphi = P_{\sigma_i}$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$ (see Proposition 2.3.6.) .

We now introduce the thin chamber complex $\Sigma_\circ$ of all parabolic subgroups of G containing T . We shall take a closer look at this complex , and in general at the building $\Delta(G)$ in the next chapter .

Proposition 2.4.4. Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. Let φ be in $\Gamma_{B,T}$. Then we have

$$(B^{n_i})^{\varphi} = B^{n_{\sigma_i}} \qquad \text{for every } i = 1,\dots,\ell .$$

Proof : For every i in $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$, we have $P_i = \langle B , B^{n_i} \rangle$ ([C_2] Proposition 2.1.5.) . Now let us fix i in $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$. Then , from $B^{n_i} \le P_i$, we get

$$(B^{n_i})^{\varphi} \le P_i^{\varphi} = P_{\sigma_i} .$$

But $T \le B^{n_i} \Rightarrow T \le (B^{n_i})^{\varphi}$, and so $(B^{n_i})^{\varphi}$ lies in Σ_0, which is a thin chamber complex where the partial order is the reverse of the set theoretic inclusion . In particular P_{σ_i} contains only two Borel subgroups in Σ_0, namely B and $B^{n_{\sigma_i}}$. Hence we must have $(B^{n_i})^{\varphi} = B^{n_{\sigma_i}}$, as $B^{\varphi} = B$. #

Proposition 2.4.5. Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. Let φ be in $\Gamma_{B,T}$. Then we have

$$(X_{-\alpha_i})^{\varphi} = X_{-\alpha_{\sigma_i}} \quad \text{and} \quad X_{\alpha_i}{}^{\varphi} = X_{\alpha_{\sigma_i}}$$

for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$.

Proof : For every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$, we have $X_{-\alpha_i} = U^- \wedge U^{n_i}$ ([C_1] page 101, 115 and [C_2] page 50 , 58) . From Proposition 2.4.4. , we have $(B^{n_i})^{\varphi} = B^{n_{\sigma_i}}$, and so we get $(U^{n_i})^{\varphi} = U^{n_{\sigma_i}}$, as U^{n_i} and $U^{n_{\sigma_i}}$ are respectively the unipotent radical of B^{n_i} and $B^{n_{\sigma_i}}$. Therefore we obtain

$$(X_{-\alpha_i})^{\varphi} = (U^- \wedge U^{n_i})^{\varphi} = U^- \wedge U^{n_{\sigma_i}} = X_{-\alpha_{\sigma_i}} .$$

We now consider the Borel subgroup B^-. We have $B^- = B^{n_0}$, where n_0 is any representative of w_0 in W. Then , as $B \wedge B^{n_0} = T$, we have $B^{n_i} \wedge B^{n_0 n_i} = T$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$, and so $B^{n_0 n_i}$ is the opposite to B^{n_i} in Σ_0. Hence , for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$, $(B^{n_0 n_i})^{\varphi}$ is opposite to $(B^{n_i})^{\varphi} = B^{n_{\sigma_i}}$ and it lies in Σ_0. Therefore we must have $(B^{n_0 n_i})^{\varphi} = B^{n_0 n_{\sigma_i}}$. So we obtain

$$X_{\alpha_i}{}^{\varphi} = (U \wedge U^{n_0 n_i})^{\varphi} = U \wedge U^{n_0 n_{\sigma_i}} = X_{\alpha_{\sigma_i}} .$$ #

Corollary 2.4.6. Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. Let φ be in $\Gamma_{B,T}$. Then , for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$, we have

$\tau(\alpha_i) = \alpha_{\sigma_i}$ and $\tau(-\alpha_i) = -\alpha_{\sigma_i}$,

where τ and σ are the maps previously defined .

Proof : By the definition of τ we have $X_{\alpha_i}{}^{\varphi} = X_{\tau(\alpha_i)}$ and $X_{-\alpha_i}{}^{\varphi} = X_{\tau(-\alpha_i)}$. Hence , from Proposition 2.4.5. , it follows that $\tau(\alpha_i) = \alpha_{\sigma_i}$ and $\tau(-\alpha_i) = -\alpha_{\sigma_i}$. #

We can now consider the cases when G has type B_2 , F_4 or G_2 .

Lemma 2.4.7. Suppose X , Y are elementary abelian p-subgroups of a group G and let φ be an index-preserving autoprojectivity of G . Then we have

$[X,Y] = \{1\}$ if and only if $[X^{\varphi},Y^{\varphi}] = \{1\}$.

Proof : Let x , y be elements of X , Y respectively , and let $\bar{x}$, $\bar{y}$ be elements of X^{φ} , Y^{φ} respectively such that $\langle x\rangle^{\varphi} = \langle\bar{x}\rangle$ and $\langle y\rangle^{\varphi} = \langle\bar{y}\rangle$. Suppose $[X,Y] = \{1\}$. Then we have

$|\langle\bar{x}, \bar{y}\rangle| = |\langle x, y\rangle| \le p^2$,

as φ is index-preserving , and so $[\bar{x},\bar{y}] = 1$. It follows that $[X^{\varphi},Y^{\varphi}] = \{1\}$. Similarly $[X^{\varphi},Y^{\varphi}] = \{1\}$ implies that $[X,Y] = \{1\}$. Hence we have $[X,Y] = \{1\}$ if and only if $[X^{\varphi},Y^{\varphi}] = \{1\}$. #

Proposition 2.4.8. Let G be a simple algebraic group over K . Let φ be in $\Gamma_{B,T}$. Suppose the symmetry $\bar{\sigma}$ of the Dynkin diagram of G induced by φ is non-trivial . If G has type B_2 or F_4 , then the characteristic p of the field K must be 2 . If instead G has type G_2 , then we must have $p = 3$.

Proof : Assume first that G has type B_2 or F_4 . Then there exists two simple roots a , b interchanged by $\bar{\sigma}$, such that the positive roots which are linear combinations of a , b , are : a, b, $a+b$, $2a+b$ ([C_1] page 214) . Let us denote by $\lambda(a,b)$ this set of positive roots which are linear combinations of a , b . Assume now that the characteristic p is not 2 . We shall achieve a contradiction in a few steps . First we show that the bijection τ of Φ induced by φ fixes the set $\lambda(a,b)$. This is clear if G has type B_2 , for then we have $\lambda(a,b) = \Phi^+$. So suppose G has type F_4 . We have

$$[X_a, X_b] = X_{a+b}X_{2a+b}$$

by Proposition 2.5 and the following remark on page 66 in [B,T]. Hence we get $X_{a+b}X_{2a+b} \leq U_1$, where we denote by U_1 the subgroup $\langle X_a, X_b \rangle$ of U. Let Ψ be the set of roots γ in Φ such that X_γ is contained in U_1. Then we have $\lambda(a,b) = \Psi$, by 3.4 in [B,T], as $\lambda(a,b)$ is closed by construction, U_1 is closed and connected as it is the union of closed and connected subgroups, T is contained in $\mathcal{N}(U_1)$ as T is contained both in $\mathcal{N}(X_a)$ and $\mathcal{N}(X_b)$, and finally $T \wedge U_1 = \{1\}$ as $T \wedge U = \{1\}$ (for the definition of a closed set of roots see [B,T] 3.0).

Now let i, j be the elements of $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$ such that $a = \alpha_i$ and $b = \alpha_j$. By the definitions of σ and ϑ, we get $\sigma_i = j$, $\sigma_j = i$. Also, by Corollary 2.4.6., we have

$$\tau(a) = \tau(\alpha_i) = \alpha_{\sigma_i} = \alpha_j = b,$$

and similarly $\tau(b) = a$. Hence we obtain

$$U_1^{\varphi} = X_a^{\varphi} \vee X_b^{\varphi} = X_{\tau(a)} \vee X_{\tau(b)} = X_b \vee X_a = U_1.$$

Therefore, if γ is a root in Φ, we have

$$\gamma \in \lambda(a,b) \leftrightarrow X_\gamma \leq U_1 \leftrightarrow X_\gamma^{\varphi} \leq U_1^{\varphi} = U_1 \leftrightarrow X_{\tau(\gamma)} \leq U_1 \leftrightarrow$$
$$\tau(\gamma) \in \lambda(a,b).$$

Hence τ fixes $\lambda(a,b)$. In particular τ fixes the set $\kappa(a,b) = \lambda(a,b) \setminus \{a,b\}$.

For every root s in Φ, let us denote by $c(s)$ the number of roots r in $\kappa(a,b)$ such that $[X_s, X_r] = \{1\}$. We prove that $c(a) = c(b)$. Let $\gamma_1,\dots,\gamma_k$ be the roots r in $\kappa(a,b)$ such that $[X_a, X_r] = \{1\}$. Then, by Lemma 2.4.7., we have

$$[X_a^{\varphi}, X_{\gamma_i}^{\varphi}] = \{1\} \qquad \text{for } i = 1,\dots,k,$$

as for every root α of Φ the root-subgroup X_α is isomorphic to $(K,+)$, which is an abelian p-group. Hence we have

$$[X_b, X_{\tau(\gamma_i)}] = \{1\} \text{ for every } i = 1,\dots,k.$$

But the $\tau(\gamma_i)$'s are pairwise distinct, and so we have $c(b) \geq k = c(a)$, as τ fixes $\kappa(a,b)$. By symmetry we have $c(a) \geq c(b)$, so that $c(a) = c(b)$.

From Chevalley's Commutator Formula, we have

$[x_a(1), x_{a+b}(1)] = x_{2a+b}(\pm 2)$,

$[X_a, X_{2a+b}] = \{1\}$,

$[X_b, X_{a+b}] = \{1\}$,

$[X_b, X_{2a+b}] = \{1\}$.

Therefore we get $c(b) = 2$ and $c(a) = 1$, as $p \neq 2$. This is a contradiction , because we proved that we must have $c(a) = c(b)$. Hence if G has type B_2 or F_4 , the characteristic of the field is 2 .

Now assume that G has type G_2 . In this case σ interchanges the simple roots α_1 and α_2 . We choose the notation $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = (a,b)$ or $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = (b,a)$ in order to have $\Phi^+ = \{ a, b, a+b, 2a+b, 3a+b, 3a+2b \}$. As in the previous case , the bijection τ fixes the set $\lambda(a,b)\setminus\{a,b\} = \Phi^+\setminus\{a,b\}$, and again , if for every root s we denote by $c(s)$ the number of roots r in $\lambda(a,b)\setminus\{a,b\}$ such that $[X_s, X_r] = \{1\}$, we must have $c(a) = c(b)$. From Chevalley ' s Commutator formula , we have the following relations :

$[X_b, X_{a+b}] = \{1\}$,

$[X_b, X_{2a+b}] = \{1\}$,

$[X_b, X_{3a+2b}] = \{1\}$,

$[x_a(1), x_{a+b}(1)] = x_{2a+b}(\pm 2)x_{3a+b}(\pm 3)\, x_{3a+2b}(\pm 3)$,

$[x_a(1), x_{2a+b}(1)] = x_{3a+b}(\pm 3)$,

$[X_a, X_{3a+2b}] = \{1\}$,

$[X_a, X_{3a+b}] = \{1\}$.

Now suppose for a contradiction that $p \neq 3$. Then we have $c(b) \geq 3$, while $c(a) = 2$. Hence we do not have $c(a) = c(b)$, and this is a contradiction . Therefore we must have $p = 3$. #

Lemma 2.4.9. Let G be a simple algebraic group over K . Let φ be in $\Gamma_{B,T}$. Then there exists a graph automorphism δ of G such that we have

$$P^{\varphi} = P^{\delta}$$

for every parabolic subgroup P containing B .

Proof : Let σ be the symmetry of the Dynkin diagram of G induced by φ . We first prove the existence of a graph automorphism δ of G such that

$X_r{}^\delta = X_{\sigma(r)}$ for every simple root r of Φ. This follows immediately from Proposition 12.2.3. in [C_1] if all the roots in Φ have the same length. Therefore let us suppose that the roots are not all of the same length. Then, if $\sigma = 1$, the choice $\delta = 1$ will do. If instead we have $\sigma \neq 1$ then, by Proposition 2.4.8., we must have $p = 2$ if G has type B_2 or F_4, and $p = 3$ if G has type G_2. Then the existence of a graph automorphism δ such that $X_r{}^\delta = X_{\sigma(r)}$ for every simple root r of Φ, follows from 12.3.3. and 12.4.1. in [C_1]. To conclude, we need some properties of the graph automorphism δ. Following [C_1] § 12.2, 12.3, 12.4, we define a bijection $\vee$ of Φ, and we denote by $\bar{r}$ the image of r under $\vee$ for every r in Φ. We remind that $\vee$ comes from an isometry of the euclidean space spanned by the roots if all the roots have the same length, and it is defined by the map

$r = \Sigma\, n_i\alpha_i \mapsto \bar{r} = \Sigma\, n_i(\alpha_i,\alpha_i)(r,r)^{-1}\,\alpha_{\sigma_i}$ (sum over the set $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$),

in the case $\sigma \neq 1$ and G of type B_2, F_4 or G_2.

In any case it turns out that

$\vee(\Phi^+) = \Phi^+$, $\vee(\alpha_i) = \alpha_{\sigma_i}$ and $\vee(-\alpha_i) = -\alpha_{\sigma_i}$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$

(see [C_1] 12.2.2., 12.3.2. and the following Observation). Also, from the construction of δ ([C_1] 12.2.3., 12.3.3., 12.4.1.) we have $X_r{}^\delta = X_{\bar{r}}$ for every root r of Φ. Hence we get $U^\delta = \prod X_r{}^\delta = \prod X_r = U$ (the product being over all the positive roots). We obtain

(*) $B^\delta = \mathcal{N}(U)^\delta = \mathcal{N}(U^\delta) = B$.

We also have

(**) $X_{-\alpha_i}{}^\delta = X_{\vee(-\alpha_i)} = X_{-\alpha_{\sigma_i}}$, for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$.

We are now able to prove that $P^\varphi = P^\delta$ for every parabolic subgroup P containing B. We only need to show that this holds for the minimal parabolic subgroups $P_1, \dots, P_\ell$ of G containing B, as the interval $[G/B]$ is a Boolean lattice of finite length. From 2.6.4 in [C_2], we have $P_i = \langle B, X_{-\alpha_i}\rangle$ for every $i = 1,\dots,\ell$. Hence we obtain

$P_i{}^\varphi = \langle B^\varphi, X_{-\alpha_i}{}^\varphi\rangle = \langle B, X_{-\alpha_{\sigma_i}}\rangle$,

as $B^\varphi = B$, and $X_{-\alpha_i}{}^\varphi = X_{-\alpha_{\sigma_i}}$ by Proposition 2.4.5.. On the other hand we have

$$P_i^{\delta} = \langle B^{\delta}, X_{-\alpha_i}{}^{\delta} \rangle = \langle B, X_{-\alpha_{\sigma i}} \rangle ,$$

as $B^{\delta} = B$ by (*), and $X_{-\alpha_i}{}^{\delta} = X_{-\alpha_{\sigma i}}$ by (**). Therefore we have

$$P_i^{\varphi} = P_i^{\delta} \quad \text{for every } i = 1,\dots,\ell ,$$

and so $P^{\varphi} = P^{\delta}$ for every parabolic subgroup P containing B. ∎

From the previous lemma, given any autoprojectivity φ of G fixing a Borel subgroup B of G and a maximal torus T of B, we can adjust φ by a graph automorphism δ in order to fix T and all the parabolic subgroups of G containing B.

We now give the following

Definition 2.4.10. : Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. Then, for every Borel subgroup B of G and every maximal torus T of G contained in B, we define the group $\Gamma_{[G/B],T}$ to be the subgroup of all elements of $\Gamma_{B,T}$ fixing every parabolic subgroup of G containing B. ∎

Therefore, by Lemma 2.4.9., for every φ in $\Gamma_{B,T}$, there exists a graph automorphism δ of G such that $\varphi(\delta^{-1})^*$ lies in $\Gamma_{[G/B],T}$.

In the next chapter we shall study in detail the group $\Gamma_{[G/B],T}$.

Chapter 3 The action of Aut $L(G)$ on the Building $\Delta(G)$ associated to G.

In this chapter we shall consider in detail the action of the group Aut $L(G)$ on the Building $\Delta(G)$. First we recall some properties of $\Delta(G)$, and then we shall make use of these to determine the structure of Aut $L(G)$. For convenience we shall write Δ instead of $\Delta(G)$ when there is no ambiguity (we follow [T_2] Theorem 5.2) .

§ 3.1 The Building Δ .

The elements of Δ are all the parabolic subgroups of G , and the partial order on Δ is the reverse of the set-theoretic inclusion . Following the usual terminology we shall often call the elements of Δ faces . The chambers of Δ are the Borel subgroups of G . The set of apartments of Δ is the set

$\{ \Sigma_T \mid T \text{ is a maximal torus of } G \}$,

where , for every maximal torus T of G , Σ_T is the (finite) set of all parabolic subgroups of G containing T . More explicitly , if B is a Borel subgroup of G containing T , we have

$\Sigma_T = \{ {}^{w}P \mid P \geq B \text{ and } w \in W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T \}$ (recall that for every w in W we denote by w any representative of w in $\mathcal{N}(T)$) .

We make G act on Δ by left conjugation . If we define the normalizer of Σ_T in G by

$\mathcal{N}(\Sigma_T) = \{ g \in G \mid {}^{g}\Sigma_T = \Sigma_T \}$,

then we have $\mathcal{N}(\Sigma_T) = \mathcal{N}(T)$. From the existence of a unique conjugacy class of maximal tori in G , it follows that if T is a maximal torus of G and Σ is any apartment of Δ , then there exists g in G such that $\Sigma = {}^{g}\Sigma_T$.

Two faces X and Y of Δ have the same type if and only if X and Y are conjugate in G . Hence an automorphism ψ of Δ is type-preserving if and only if we have that X and X^{ψ} are conjugate in G for every X in Δ .

Finally we recall that if $\psi , \nu : \Sigma \longrightarrow \Sigma'$ are isomorphisms between two thin chamber complexes Σ, Σ' such that $X^{\psi} = X^{\nu}$ for every face X of a chamber of Σ, then we have $\psi = \nu$ ([T$_2$] Proposition 1.7).

We now fix a Borel subgroup B of G and a maximal torus T of B. The couple (B,T) will be fixed for the rest of this chapter. We shall denote by U the unipotent radical of B, by N the group $\mathcal{N}(T)$, by Σ_0 the apartment Σ_T, and we shall call it the fundamental apartment of Δ.

<u>Proposition 3.1.1.</u> Let g be an element of G. Let V_g be the set of all apartments of Δ containing the chamber ${}^{g}B$. Then the map $u \mapsto {}^{gu}\Sigma_0$, gives rise to a bijection of U onto V_g.

<u>Proof</u> : It is sufficient to consider the case when $g = 1$, for then the result follows for all g in G. So assume $g = 1$. First, if u lies in U, then we have $B = {}^{u}B$, and so B lies in ${}^{u}\Sigma_0$. Now let Σ be an any apartment of Δ containing B. There exists h in G such that $\Sigma = {}^{h}\Sigma_0$. We must have $B = {}^{hn}B$ for some n in N, because B is a chamber, and the set of chambers of ${}^{h}\Sigma_0$ is $\{ {}^{hn}B \mid n \in N \}$. Hence we have $hn \in \mathcal{N}(B) = B$, and so there exist u in U, t in T such that $hn = ut$, as $B = UT$. Therefore we get

$$\Sigma = {}^{h}\Sigma_0 = {}^{utn^{-1}}\Sigma_0 = {}^{u}\Sigma_0 ,$$

as tn^{-1} lies in N. Finally, if u, u' are elements of U such that ${}^{u}\Sigma_0 = {}^{u'}\Sigma_0$, then $u^{-1}u'$ normalizes Σ_0, and so $u^{-1}u'$ lies in $U \wedge N = \{1\}$. It follows that $u = u'$. ∎

Let n_0 be a fixed representative of w_0 in N. We have the following

<u>Proposition 3.1.2.</u> Let b be any element of B, and let P be a parabolic subgroup of G containing B. If ${}^{bn_0}P$ lies in ${}^{b}\Sigma_0$, then b lies in ${}^{n_0}P$.

<u>Proof</u> : Suppose that ${}^{bn_0}P$ lies in ${}^{b}\Sigma_0$. From the defining axioms of a Building, there exists an isomorphism $\gamma : \Sigma_0 \to {}^{b}\Sigma_0$ such that γ fixes all faces of B

and ${}^{a\circ}P$, as both B and ${}^{a\circ}P$ are in Σ_o and ${}^{b}\Sigma_o$. Let $\nu : \Sigma_o \longrightarrow {}^{b}\Sigma_o$ be the map defined by the position $X \mapsto {}^{b}X$ for every X in Σ_o . Then ν is an isomorphism , and it fixes all faces of B . We have $\gamma = \nu$ for Σ_o and ${}^{b}\Sigma_o$ are thin chamber complexes , and $X^{\gamma} = X = X^{\nu}$ for every face X of the chamber B of Σ_o . But then we get

$${}^{ba\circ}P = ({}^{a\circ}P)^{\nu} = ({}^{a\circ}P)^{\gamma} = {}^{a\circ}P \ .$$

So b lies in $\mathcal{N}({}^{a\circ}P) = {}^{a\circ}P$. ∎

The Weyl group W acts in a natural way on the set of roots Φ ([C_2] page 19) . The longest element w_o of W has the property of being the unique element of W such that $w_o(\Phi^+) = \Phi^-$. In particular , we have $w_o(\Pi) = -\Pi$. Also , for any i in $\{1,...,\ell\}$, there exists $j(i)$ in $\{1,...,\ell\}$ such that

$$w_o s_i w_o = s_{j(i)} \quad ([C_2] \text{ page } 55) \ .$$

Consequently $w_o(-\alpha_i) = \alpha_{j(i)}$, for every $i = 1,...,\ell$. The mapping $i \mapsto j(i)$ of I into itself is clearly involutory , in the sense that $j^2(i) = i$ for every i . It is called the opposition involution .

<u>Proposition 3.1.3.</u> Let s be a simple root and let r be the simple root $w_o(-s)$. For every g in G let R_g be the set of all apartments of Δ containing ${}^{g}B$ and ${}^{g n\circ}P_{(s)}$. Then the map given by

$$a \mapsto {}^{g x_r(a)}\Sigma_o$$

is a bijection of K onto R_g .

<u>Proof</u> : It is sufficient to consider the case when $g = 1$, for then the result follows for all g in G . By Proposition 3.1.1. , we only need to show that if u is an element of U such that ${}^{n\circ}P_{(s)}$ lies in ${}^{u}\Sigma_o$, then u lies in the root-subgroup X_r , as then we use the isomorphism $x_r : a \mapsto x_r(a)$ between $(K,+)$ and X_r . Now , if ${}^{n\circ}P_{(s)}$ lies in ${}^{u}\Sigma_o$, then u lies in ${}^{n\circ}P_{(s)}$, by Proposition 3.1.2. . Hence we get that u lies in $U \wedge {}^{n\circ}P_{(s)} = X_r$ ([C_2] page 59) , and we are done . ∎

Proposition 3.1.4. Let r' be a simple root, w an element of W and u an element of U. If we denote by r the root $w(r')$, then for every apartment Σ of Δ containing ${}^{u\dot{w}}B$ and ${}^{u\dot{w}n_0}P_{(w_0(-r'))}$, there exists a unique a in K such that $\Sigma = {}^{ux_r(a)}\Sigma_0$.

Proof : It is sufficient to consider the case when $u = 1$, for then the result follows for all u in U. From Proposition 3.1.3., there exists a' in K such that

$$\Sigma = {}^{\dot{w}x_{r'}(a')}\Sigma_0$$

Now we have $\dot{w}X_{r'}\dot{w}^{-1} = X_{w(r')} = X_r$ ([C_2] page 57), and so there exists a in K such that $\dot{w}x_{r'}(a')\dot{w}^{-1} = x_r(a)$. Hence we obtain

$$\Sigma = {}^{\dot{w}x_{r'}(a')}\Sigma_0 = {}^{\dot{w}x_{r'}(a')\dot{w}^{-1}}\Sigma_0 = {}^{x_r(a)}\Sigma_0 ,$$

as $\dot{w}$ lies in $\mathcal{N}(\Sigma_0)$. Uniqueness follows from the fact that $U \wedge N = \{1\}$. #

Observation 3.1.5. Suppose φ is an autoprojectivity of G. Then we know from Theorem 2.2.6., that φ acts on Δ. If now Σ is an apartment of Δ, we put

$$\Sigma^\varphi = \{ X^\varphi \mid X \in \Sigma \} .$$

It is then clear that Σ^φ is an apartment of Δ. In this way φ acts on the set of apartments of Δ. Suppose now that φ fixes the Borel subgroup B of G. It then follows that φ permutes the set of apartments of Δ containing B. Hence, by Proposition 3.1.1., we can define a map

$$\theta : U \longrightarrow U , \text{ by the rule } {}^{u^\theta}\Sigma_0 = ({}^u\Sigma_0)^\varphi .$$

We show that this map θ is a bijection. If we start with the inverse φ^{-1} of φ, then with the same procedure we can define a map

$$\zeta : U \longrightarrow U ; \text{ by the rule } {}^{u^\zeta}\Sigma_0 = ({}^u\Sigma_0)^{\varphi^{-1}} .$$

It turns out that $\theta\zeta = \zeta\theta = id_U$, and so θ is bijective.

Suppose now that φ fixes also ${}^{n_0}P_{\{s\}}$, for some simple root s. Then, by Proposition 3.1.3., we have $X_r^\theta \subseteq X_r$, where $r = w_0(-s)$. Again we note that φ^{-1} fixes ${}^{n_0}P_{\{s\}}$ as well, and so we also get $X_r^\zeta \subseteq X_r$, which implies $X_r^\theta =$

X_r . Therefore , for every simple root r , we have $X_r^{\varphi} = X_r$. ∎

In the previous chapter we proved that if φ is any autoprojectivity of G , then there exist an inner automorphism ι_g and a graph automorphism δ of G such that the autoprojectivity $\varphi(\iota_g^{-1}\delta^{-1})^*$ fixes T and every parabolic subgroup containing B , i.e. $\varphi(\iota_g^{-1}\delta^{-1})^*$ lies in $\Gamma_{[G/B],T}$. In the next paragraph we shall start studying the action of the group $\Gamma_{[G/B],T}$ on Δ .

§ 3.2 The action of $\Gamma_{[G/B],T}$ on the set of apartments containing B .

In this paragraph we shall prove the existence , for every φ in $\Gamma_{[G/B],T}$, of a diagonal automorphism d of G acting as φ does on the apartments Σ_0 and ${}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_0$ for every simple root r .

For the rest of this chapter we shall denote by Γ_0 the group $\Gamma_{[G/B],T}$.

Proposition 3.2.1. Let φ be in Γ_0 . Then the automorphism of Δ induced by φ is type-preserving .

Proof : To show that the automorphism of Δ induced by φ is type-preserving , we have to show that for every X in Δ , X and X^{φ} are conjugate in G . So let X be in Δ , and let Σ be an apartment of Δ containing X and B (existence of Σ comes from the axioms of a building) . Σ^{φ} is an apartment containing B as well , and so , by Proposition 3.1.1. , there exist u , u' in U such that $\Sigma = {}^{u}\Sigma_0$, and $\Sigma^{\varphi} = {}^{u'}\Sigma_0$. We define two isomorphisms between Σ and Σ^{φ} . First we denote by ε the isomorphism induced by φ , and then we define ν by the map $Y \mapsto {}^{u'u^{-1}}Y$ for every Y in Σ .

Let now P be a parabolic subgroup containing B . Then we have

$$P^{\varepsilon} = P^{\varphi} = P ,$$

as φ lies in Γ_0 , and $P^{\nu} = P$ as $u'u^{-1} \in U \leq B$. Therefore we must have

$\varepsilon = \nu$. Hence we obtain $X^{\varphi} = X^{\varepsilon} = X^{\nu} = {}^{n'n^{-1}}X$, and so X and X^{φ} are conjugate . It follows that the automorphism of Δ induced by φ is type-preserving . #

Proposition 3.2.2. Let φ be in Γ_o , and let Σ be any apartment of Δ containing B . If φ fixes Σ , then it fixes every face of Σ . In particular φ fixes every face of Σ_o .

Proof : Suppose φ fixes Σ . The map $\varepsilon : \Sigma \longrightarrow \Sigma$ given by $X \mapsto X^{\varphi}$ for every X in Σ , defines an automorphism of the thin chamber complex Σ fixing all the faces of the chamber B . Then ε must be the identity on Σ . Therefore φ fixes all the elements of Σ . In particular , as $T^{\varphi} = T \Rightarrow$ $\Sigma_o{}^{\varphi} = \Sigma_o$, φ fixes all the faces of Σ_o . #

Let r be a simple root , and let s be the simple root $w_o(-r)$. If φ lies in Γ_o , then by Proposition 3.2.2. , we have ${}^{n_o}P_{(s)}{}^{\varphi} = {}^{n_o}P_{(s)}$, and so , by Observation 3.1.5. , we have $X_r{}^{\theta} = X_r$. Then there exists a unique k_r in K such that

$$x_r(1)^{\theta} = x_r(k_r) .$$

We must have k_r in K^{*} , as θ is bijective , and already $1^{\theta} = 1$. Let χ be the character of the root-lattice $\mathbb{Z}\Phi$ obtained by extending by linearity the map of Π into K^{*} given by the position $r \mapsto k_r$ for every r in Π . We have the following

Lemma 3.2.3. Let φ be in Γ_o . Then there exists a diagonal automorphism d of G such that

$$X^{\varphi} = X^{d}$$

for every face X of Δ lying in Σ_o or in ${}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_o$, where r is any simple root .

Proof : Let d be the diagonal automorphism of G induced by the character χ of the root-lattice $\mathbb{Z}\Phi$, defined above . Then , by the definition of the automorphism d , we have

$$x_\alpha(k)^d = x_\alpha(\chi(\alpha)k) \quad \text{for every } \alpha \text{ in } \Phi \text{ and every } k \text{ in } K,$$

and

$$t^d = t \quad \text{for every } t \text{ in } T \ ([C_1] \text{ page } 100).$$

Hence we have $T^d = T$ and ${X_\alpha}^d = X_\alpha$ for every root α. In particular d fixes every parabolic subgroup P of G containing B, as P is generated by T and some of the root-subgroups X_α. It follows that the autoprojectivity d^* of G induced by d lies in Γ_o. Also we have $x_r(1)^d = x_r(\chi(r)) = x_r(k_r)$ for every r in Π, and so

$$({}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_o)^d = {}^{x_r(1)^d}(\Sigma_o)^d = {}^{x_r(k_r)}\Sigma_o .$$

Let us denote by ψ the autoprojectivity $\varphi(d^*)^{-1}$. Then ψ lies in Γ_o, and so we have $X^\psi = X$ for every X in Σ_o, by Proposition 3.2.2. Hence we get

$$X^\varphi = X^{d^*} = X^d \quad \text{for every } X \text{ in } \Sigma_o .$$

Suppose now that r is a simple root. Then we have

$$({}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_o)^\psi = ({}^{x_r(k_r)}\Sigma_o)^{(d^*)^{-1}} = ({}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_o)^{d^*(d^*)^{-1}} = {}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_o .$$

Therefore ψ fixes every face of ${}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_o$ by Proposition 3.2.2.. So, for every r in Π and every X in ${}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_o$, we have $X^\varphi = X^{d^*} = X^d$. #

We give now the following

Definition 3.2.4. : We define $\Gamma_{o,\Pi}$ to be the group of all autoprojectivities in Γ_o such that $({}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_o)^\varphi = {}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_o$ for every simple root r. #

Therefore, by Lemma 3.2.3., for any autoprojectivity φ in Γ_o, there exists a diagonal automorphism d of G such that the autoprojectivity $\varphi(d^*)^{-1}$ lies in $\Gamma_{o,\Pi}$.

In the next paragraph we shall take a closer look at the bijection θ.

§ 3.3 The bijection θ .

As we have already noticed , for every φ in Γ_o , the map $\theta : U \longrightarrow U$, given by the rule ${}^{u^\theta}\Sigma_o = ({}^u\Sigma_o)^\varphi$ is a bijection fixing the root-subgroups X_r for every simple root r . We also have that $1^\theta = 1$, as $\Sigma_o{}^\varphi = \Sigma_o$.

We shall now further investigate the properties of θ in order to define a particular field automorphism of G .

Proposition 3.3.1. Let φ be in Γ_o . Then we have

$$({}^uX)^\varphi = {}^{u^\theta}X$$

for every u in U and every X in Σ_o .

Proof : Let u be in U and X in Σ_o . By the definition of θ , we have ${}^{u^\theta}\Sigma_o = ({}^u\Sigma_o)^\varphi$, and so the map $A \mapsto A^\varphi$, where A lies in ${}^u\Sigma_o$, determines an isomorphism ε between ${}^u\Sigma_o$ and ${}^{u^\theta}\Sigma_o$. Let ν be the isomorphism of ${}^u\Sigma_o$ onto ${}^{u^\theta}\Sigma_o$ given by the map $A \mapsto {}^{u^\theta u^{-1}}A$, for every A in ${}^u\Sigma_o$. Then for every parabolic subgroup P containing B we have

$$P^\varepsilon = P^\varphi = P = P^\nu ,$$

and so we must have $\varepsilon = \nu$. Hence , if X is any face of Σ_o , we obtain

$$({}^uX)^\varphi = ({}^uX)^\nu = {}^{u^\theta u^{-1}u}X = {}^{u^\theta}X ,$$

and we are done . #

We are now able to prove a proposition and two corollaries which will be crucial later to define a field automorphism of G .

Proposition 3.3.2. Let φ be in Γ_o . Let r be a positive root , and u be an element of U . Then , for every a in K , there exists a unique b in K such that

$$(ux_r(a))^\theta = u^\theta x_r(b) .$$

Furthermore , we have $b = 0$ if and only if $a = 0$.

Proof : There exist a simple root r' and an element w in W such that r =

$w(r')$ ([C_1] Proposition 2.1.8.) . Let us denote by s the simple root $w_o(-r')$.
We apply Proposition 3.3.1. to the elements ${}^{\dot{w}}B$ and ${}^{\dot{w}n_o}P_{(s)}$ to get

$$({}^{u\dot{w}}B)^{\varphi} = {}^{u^{\theta}\dot{w}}B \quad \text{and} \quad ({}^{u\dot{w}n_o}P_{(s)})^{\varphi} = {}^{u^{\theta}\dot{w}n_o}P_{(s)} .$$

Hence φ induces a bijection of the set of all apartments containing ${}^{\dot{w}}B$ and ${}^{\dot{w}n_o}P_{(s)}$ onto the set of all apartments containing ${}^{u^{\theta}\dot{w}}B$ and ${}^{u^{\theta}\dot{w}n_o}P_{(s)}$.
Therefore, by Proposition 3.1.4. , for every a in K , there exists a unique b in K such that

$$({}^{ux_r(a)}\Sigma_o)^{\varphi} = {}^{u^{\theta}x_r(b)}\Sigma_o .$$

But , by the definition of θ , we have $({}^{ux_r(a)}\Sigma_o)^{\varphi} = {}^{(ux_r(a))^{\theta}}\Sigma_o$, and so we obtain

$$(ux_r(a))^{\theta} = u^{\theta}x_r(b) .$$

Suppose now b' is any element of K such that $(ux_r(a))^{\theta} = u^{\theta}x_r(b')$. Then we get $u^{\theta}x_r(b) = u^{\theta}x_r(b')$, which implies $x_r(b) = x_r(b')$, and so $b' = b$ as x_r is an isomorphism . Also , we have

$b = 0 \iff u^{\theta}x_r(b) = u^{\theta} \iff (ux_r(a))^{\theta} = u^{\theta} \iff ux_r(a) = u \iff x_r(a) = 1 \iff$
$a = 0$. #

<u>Corollary 3.3.3.</u> Let φ be in Γ_e , and let r be a positive root . Then , for every a in K , there exists a unique b in K such that

$$x_r(a)^{\theta} = x_r(b) .$$

Also , we have $b = 0$ if and only if $a = 0$.

<u>Proof</u> : This follows immediately from Proposition 3.3.2. by taking $u = 1$, as $1^{\theta} = 1$. #

<u>Corollary 3.3.4.</u> Let φ be in Γ_e , and u be an element of U . Let $r_1 , \ldots , r_m$ be pairwise distinct positive roots . Then , for every $(a_1 , \ldots , a_m)$ in K^m , there exists a unique $(b_1 , \ldots , b_m)$ in K^m such that

$$(ux_{r_1}(a_1) \cdots x_{r_m}(a_m))^{\theta} = u^{\theta}x_{r_1}(b_1) \ldots x_{r_m}(b_m) .$$

Furthermore , for any i in $\{1,\ldots,m\}$, we have $b_i = 0$ if and only if $a_i = 0$.

<u>Proof</u> : We shall prove the existence part by induction on m . The case in

which $m = 1$ comes from Proposition 3.3.2. . So assume $m > 1$, and suppose we proved the result for every k less than m . Now let $(a_1, ..., a_m)$ be in K^m . We put

$$u' = ux_{r_1}(a_1) \cdots x_{r_{m-1}}(a_{m-1}) .$$

Then , by Proposition 3.3.2. , there exists b_m in K such that $(u'x_{r_m}(a_m))^\theta = u'^\theta x_{r_m}(b_m)$, and , by induction assumption , there exists $(b_1, ..., b_{m-1})$ in K^{m-1} such that $u'^\theta = u^\theta x_{r_1}(b_1) \ldots x_{r_{m-1}}(b_{m-1})$. Hence we obtain $(ux_{r_1}(a_1) \cdots x_{r_m}(a_m))^\theta = u^\theta x_{r_1}(b_1) \ldots x_{r_m}(b_m)$. Uniqueness follows from the fact that every element of U is expressible in a unique way as a product $\prod_{r \in \Phi^+} x_r(c_r)$ for any fixed order on Φ^+ .

Suppose now that for some i in $\{1,...,m\}$ we have $a_i = 0$. Then we get $ux_{r_1}(a_1) \cdots x_{r_m}(a_m) = ux_{r_1}(a_1) \cdots x_{r_{i-1}}(a_{i-1})x_{r_{i+1}}(a_{i+1}) \cdots x_{r_m}(a_m)$, and so there exists $(c_1, ..., c_{m-1})$ be in K^{m-1} such that

$(ux_{r_1}(a_1) \cdots x_{r_m}(a_m))^\theta = u^\theta x_{r_1}(c_1) \ldots x_{r_{i-1}}(c_{i-1})x_{r_{i+1}}(c_i) \cdots x_{r_m}(c_{m-1})$.

But then , if we take $d_1 = c_1, \ldots , d_{i-1} = c_{i-1}, d_i = 0 , d_{i+1} = c_i , ..., d_m = c_{m-1}$, we get

$$(ux_{r_1}(a_1) \cdots x_{r_m}(a_m))^\theta = u^\theta x_{r_1}(d_1) \ldots x_{r_m}(d_m) .$$

Hence we must have $b_j = d_j$ for every $j = 1,...m$, for uniqueness . In particular we obtain $b_i = 0$. Similarly we can prove that $b_i = 0$ implies $a_i = 0$. #

We already knew that for every φ in Γ_0 we have $X_r^\theta = X_r$ for every simple root r . By Corollary 3.3.3. , we can now say that this equality holds for any positive root r . Hence , for every positive root r , we can define a bijection f_r of K onto itself by the map $x_r(f_r(a)) = (x_r(a))^\theta$. In the next paragraph we shall apply this to the case when φ is an element of $\Gamma_{0,\Pi}$. The the bijections f_r will have the following properties

$f_r(0) = 0$ for every positive root r ,

$f_r(1) = 1$ for every simple root r .

We shall prove that if the rank ℓ of G is at least 2, then the f_r's are all equal to an automorphism f of K.

§ 3.4 The maps f_r.

To investigate the properties of the maps f_r, we need to know the behaviour of the bijection θ with respect to decompositions of the group U in terms of root-subgroups. We shall use a lemma, that we prove in a more general context.

Let X be a group, and let $X_1, \ldots, X_n$ be subgroups of X such that each element x of X can uniquely be written as a product $x = x_1 \cdots x_n$, where x_i lies in X_i for every $i = 1, \ldots, n$. Suppose that we have

$[X_i, X] \leq X_{i+1} \cdots X_n$ for $i = 1, \ldots, n-1$, and $[X_n, X] = \{1\}$.

Then, in particular we have that $X_i \cdots X_n$ is a normal subgroup of X for every $i = 1, \ldots, n$. Hence, from [St] page 25, we get that for every σ in the symmetric group S_n, each element x of X can be uniquely expressed as a product $x = x_{\sigma_1} \ldots x_{\sigma_n}$, where each x_i lies in X_i. We now fix i in $\{1, \ldots, n\}$. Then, for every $j = 1, \ldots n$, there exists a unique y_j in X_j, such that

$x = y_{\sigma_i} y_{\sigma_1} \cdots y_{\sigma_{i-1}} y_{\sigma_{i+1}} \cdots y_{\sigma_n}$,

as this is precisely the decomposition of x corresponding to the permutation $\nu = \sigma(i\ i-1 \ldots 3\ 2\ 1)$ (i.e. $\nu_1 = \sigma_i, \nu_2 = \sigma_1, \ldots$). We shall show that $y_{\sigma_i} = x_{\sigma_i}$.

<u>Lemma 3.4.1.</u> Let X, σ and i be defined as above. Let x be an element of X. We consider the decomposition $x = x_{\sigma_1} \ldots x_{\sigma_n}$, where each x_j lies in X_j. If the decomposition of x relative to the permutation $\nu = \sigma(i\ i-1 \ldots 3\ 2\ 1)$ (i.e. $\nu_1 = \sigma_i, \nu_2 = \sigma_1, \ldots$) is $x = y_{\nu_1} y_{\nu_2} \ldots y_{\nu_n}$, where each y_j lies in X_j, then we have $y_{\nu_1} = x_{\sigma_i}$. Hence we have

$x = x_{\sigma_1} \cdots x_{\sigma_n} = x_{\sigma_i} y_{\sigma_1} \cdots y_{\sigma_{i-1}} y_{\sigma_{i+1}} \cdots y_{\sigma_n}$.

Proof : We shall proceed by induction on n . If $n = 1$, then there is nothing to prove . So let n be greater than 1 , and assume the result for $n-1$. Let j in $\{1,\dots,n\}$ be such that $\sigma_j = n$. Suppose first that $i = j$. Then we have $n = \sigma_i$, and so x_{σ_i} lies in $X_n \leq Z(X)$. Hence we have

$$x = x_{\sigma_1} \cdots x_{\sigma_n} = x_{\sigma_i} x_{\sigma_1} \cdots x_{\sigma_{i-1}} x_{\sigma_{i+1}} \cdots x_{\sigma_n} ,$$

and we are done . So let us assume $i \neq j$. Hence σ_i is less than n . Let us define τ in S_n by the rule

$$\tau_k = \begin{cases} \sigma_k & \text{if } 1 \leq k < j \\ \sigma_{k+1} & \text{if } j \leq k < n \\ n & \text{if } k = n . \end{cases}$$

To apply the induction assumption , we consider the group $Z = X/X_n$, and its subgroups $Z_k = X_k X_n/X_n$ ($\cong X_k$) for every $k = 1,\dots,n-1$. Then we have $Z = Z_1 \cdots Z_{n-1}$ and each element z of Z can uniquely be written as a product $z = z_1 \cdots z_{n-1}$, where z_k lies in Z_k for every $k = 1,\dots,n-1$. Besides , if $k = 1,\dots,n-2$ we have

$$[Z_k , Z] = [X_k , X] X_n/X_n \leq X_{k+1} \cdots X_n /X_n = Z_{k+1} \cdots Z_{n-1} ,$$

and $[Z_{n-1} , Z] = \{1\}$.

For every u in X let us denote by $\bar{u}$ the corresponding element uX_n of Z . By the definition of τ , we have

$$x = x_{\sigma_1} \cdots x_{\sigma_n} = x_{\tau_1} \cdots x_{\tau_n} ,$$

and so we get

$$\bar{x} = \bar{x}_{\tau_1} \cdots \bar{x}_{\tau_{n-1}} ,$$

as x_{τ_n} lies in X_n . Now we have $\tau_n = n$, and so we can consider the restriction $\bar{\tau}$ of τ to the set $\{1,\dots,n-1\}$. We fix k in $\{1,\dots,n-1\}$, and we consider the decomposition $v_{\vartheta_1} \cdots v_{\vartheta_{n-1}}$ of $\bar{x}$ with respect to the permutation $\vartheta = \bar{\tau}(k\ k-1 \dots 3\ 2\ 1)$ (i.e. $\vartheta_1 = \bar{\tau}_k$, $\vartheta_2 = \bar{\tau}_1$, ...) , where v_j lies in Z_j , for every $j = 1,\dots,n-1$. Then we have

$$v_{\vartheta_1} = \bar{x}_{\tau_k} ,$$

by the induction assumption . Now , for every $j = 1,\dots,n-1$, there exists a unique u_j in X_j such that $v_j = u_j X_n$. Therefore we get

$$x = u_{\varphi_1} \cdots u_{\varphi_{n-1}} \mod X_n ,$$

and so there exists a unique u_n in X_n such that $x = u_{\varphi_1} \cdots u_{\varphi_{n-1}} u_n$. We note that the condition $v_{\varphi_1} = \bar{x}_{\tau_k}$, implies $u_{\varphi_1} = x_{\tau_k}$, as both u_{φ_1} and x_{τ_k} lie in X_{τ_k} for, by definition of $\bar{v}$, we have $\varphi_1 = \tau_k$. Finally, if we take

$$k = i \text{ if } i < j \text{ , and } k = i-1 \text{ if } i > j ,$$

then we get

$$x = x_{\sigma_i} u_{\sigma_1} \cdots u_{\sigma_{i-1}} u_{\sigma_{i+1}} \cdots u_{\sigma_n} ,$$

as $u_{\sigma_j} = u_{\tau_n} = u_n$ lies in $X_n \leq Z(X)$. Hence we obtain the decomposition

$$x = x_{v_1} u_{v_2} \cdots u_{v_n} ,$$

with respect to the permutation ν. But, by hypothesis, the decomposition of x with respect to ν is $x = y_{v_1} \cdots y_{v_n}$, and so we must have

$$y_{v_1} = x_{v_1} = x_{\sigma_i}$$

for uniqueness of decomposition. #

We apply the previous lemma to the case when X is the unipotent radical U of B.

We fix a total order $<$ on Φ^+ compatible with the height function , and we number the elements in Φ^+ such that $r_1 < r_2 < \dots < r_N$. Then we have

$$U = X_{r_1} \cdots X_{r_N} ,$$

with uniqueness of expression,

$$[X_{r_i}, U] \leq X_{r_{i+1}} \cdots X_{r_N} \text{ for every } i = 1,\dots,N-1 \text{, and } [X_{r_N}, U] = \{1\} .$$

We can therefore apply the lemma. For short in the following we shall write X_j for X_{r_j}, for every $j = 1,\dots,N$.

Let σ be in S_N, and let u be any element of U. Then we can express u uniquely as a product $u = x_{\sigma_1} \cdots x_{\sigma_N}$, where x_j lies in X_j for every $j = 1,\dots,N$. We shall show that for any φ in Γ_e, we have $u^\theta = x_{\sigma_1}{}^\theta \cdots x_{\sigma_N}{}^\theta$, where θ is the bijection of U induced by φ.

So let φ be an autoprojectivity in Γ_e and let i be fixed in $\{1,\dots,N\}$. By Lemma 3.4.1., we get

$$u = x_{\sigma_i} y_{\sigma_1} \cdots y_{\sigma_{i-1}} y_{\sigma_{i+1}} \cdots y_{\sigma_N} .$$

where for every j in $\{1,\ldots,N\}$, $j \neq i$, we have y_{σ_j} in X_{σ_j}. Hence, by Corollary 3.3.4., for every j in $\{1,\ldots,N\}$, $j \neq i$ there exists u_{σ_j} in X_{σ_j} such that

$$u^{\theta} = x_{\sigma_i}{}^{\theta} u_{\sigma_1} \cdots u_{\sigma_{i-1}} u_{\sigma_{i+1}} \cdots u_{\sigma_N} .$$

Now u^{θ}, as an element of U, has a unique decomposition

$$u^{\theta} = v_{\sigma_1} \cdots v_{\sigma_N} ,$$

with v_j in X_j for every $j = 1,\ldots,N$. Again we apply the lemma to obtain

$$u^{\theta} = v_{\sigma_i} t_{\sigma_1} \cdots t_{\sigma_{i-1}} t_{\sigma_{i+1}} \cdots t_{\sigma_N}$$

with t_{σ_j} in X_{σ_j} for every j in $\{1,\ldots,N\}$, $j \neq i$. By Corollary 3.3.3., $x_{\sigma_i}{}^{\theta}$ lies in X_{σ_i}, and so

$$u^{\theta} = x_{\sigma_i}{}^{\theta} u_{\sigma_1} \cdots u_{\sigma_{i-1}} u_{\sigma_{i+1}} \cdots u_{\sigma_N} \quad \text{and} \quad u^{\theta} = v_{\sigma_i} t_{\sigma_1} \cdots t_{\sigma_{i-1}} t_{\sigma_{i+1}} \cdots t_{\sigma_N}$$

are two ways of decomposing u^{θ} with respect to the same total order of Φ^+. Hence these two decompositions must coincide, for uniqueness of decomposition. In particular we obtain

$$x_{\sigma_i}{}^{\theta} = v_{\sigma_i} .$$

But i was any fixed element of $\{1,\ldots, N\}$, and so we get

$$x_{\sigma_i}{}^{\theta} = v_{\sigma_i} \quad \text{for every } i = 1,\ldots,N .$$

Therefore we get

$$u^{\theta} = v_{\sigma_1} \cdots v_{\sigma_N} = x_{\sigma_1}{}^{\theta} \cdots x_{\sigma_N}{}^{\theta} .$$

We can then prove the following

<u>Proposition 3.4.2.</u> Let $<$ be any total order on Φ^+, and let us number the elements in Φ^+ such that $r_1 < r_2 < \ldots < r_N$. Let φ be in Γ_o, and θ be the bijection of U induced by φ. If

$$u = x_1 \cdots x_N$$

is the decomposition of the element u of U with x_i in X_{r_i} for every $i = 1,\ldots,N$, then the decomposition of u^{θ} with respect to the same order of Φ^+ is

$$u^{\theta} = x_1{}^{\theta} \ldots x_N{}^{\theta}$$

(with $x_i{}^{\theta}$ in X_{r_i} for every $i = 1,\ldots,N$).

<u>Proof</u>: Let $<'$ be any total order on Φ^+ compatible with the height function.

Then there exists σ in S_N such that we have

$$r_{\sigma_1} <' r_{\sigma_2} <' \ldots <' r_{\sigma_N} .$$

Let us denote by s_i the root r_{σ_i} for every $i = 1,\ldots,N$, so that we get $s_1 <' s_2 <' \ldots <' s_N$. Let ν be the inverse of σ. Then, by the previous discussion, if $u = y_{\nu_1} \cdots y_{\nu_N}$ is the decomposition of u with y_i in X_{s_i} for every $i = 1,\ldots,N$, we have

$$u^\theta = y_{\nu_1}{}^\theta \cdots y_{\nu_N}{}^\theta .$$

Now, for any $i = 1,\ldots,N$, y_i in X_{s_i} implies y_{ν_i} in $X_{s_{\nu_i}}$, which leaves us with y_{ν_j} in X_{r_j}, for every $j = 1,\ldots,N$. So $u = x_1 \cdots x_N$ and $u = y_{\nu_1} \cdots y_{\nu_N}$ are two decompositions of u with x_j and y_{ν_j} in X_{r_j}, for every $j = 1,\ldots,N$. But then we must have

$$y_{\nu_j} = x_j \quad \text{for every } j = 1,\ldots,N ,$$

for uniqueness of decomposition. Therefore we obtain

$$u^\theta = y_{\nu_1}{}^\theta \cdots y_{\nu_N}{}^\theta = x_1{}^\theta \cdots x_N{}^\theta ,$$

and we are done. ∎

We can now start proving that the maps f_r for r in Φ^+, previously defined, are in fact all the same.

<u>Proposition 3.4.3.</u> Let r, s be simple roots such that $N_{r,s} = -1$. Then we have

$$f_r = f_s = f_{r+s} ,$$

and this map is multiplicative.

<u>Proof</u> : From the fact that $N_{r,s} = -1$, it follows that $r+s$ is a root, and so f_{r+s} is actually well defined. Let now a, b be elements of K. By the commutator formula, we have

$$x_s(b)x_r(a) = x_r(a)x_s(b)x_{r+s}(ab) \cdots$$

Thus, by Proposition 3.4.2., we have

$$x_s(b)^\theta x_r(a)^\theta = x_r(a)^\theta x_s(b)^\theta x_{r+s}(ab)^\theta \cdots$$

and so we get

$$x_s(f_s(b))x_r(f_r(a)) = x_r(f_r(a))x_s(f_s(b))x_{r+s}(f_{r+s}(ab)) \cdots$$

But, applying again the commutator formula, we also have

$$x_s(f_s(b))x_r(f_r(a)) = x_r(f_r(a))x_s(f_s(b))x_{r+s}(f_r(a)f_s(b)) \cdots$$

Therefore we obtain

$$f_{r+s}(ab) = f_r(a)f_s(b)$$

by uniqueness of expression. As the maps f_r are induced by φ which lies in $\Gamma_{0,\Pi}$, we have $f_r(1) = 1 = f_s(1)$, and so

$$f_r(a) = f_r(a) \cdot 1 = f_r(a)f_s(1) = f_{r+s}(a),$$

and similarly for f_s. Hence we obtain

$$f_r = f_{r+s} = f_s.$$

Besides we have

$$f_r(ab) = f_{r+s}(ab) = f_r(a)f_s(b) = f_r(a)f_r(b),$$

and so f_r is multiplicative. #

Proposition 3.4.4. Let r, s be simple roots such that $N_{r,s} = -1$. Then the map $f = f_r$ ($= f_s$) is additive.

Proof: By Proposition 3.4.3., we have $f = f_r = f_s = f_{r+s}$. Applying several times the commutator formula, we get

$$x_s(a)x_r(1)x_{r+s}(b) = x_r(1)x_s(a)x_{r+s}(a) \cdots x_{r+s}(b) = \ldots =$$
$$= x_r(1)x_s(a)x_{r+s}(a+b) \cdots$$

Hence, by Proposition 3.4.2. and 3.4.3., we have

$$x_s(f(a))x_r(1)x_{r+s}(f(b)) = x_r(1)x_s(f(a))x_{r+s}(f(a+b)) \cdots$$

But, applying again the commutator formula, we also have

$$x_s(f(a))x_r(1)x_{r+s}(f(b)) = x_r(1)x_s(f(a))x_{r+s}(f(a)+f(b)) \cdots,$$

and so we must have

$$f(a+b) = f(a) + f(b)$$

by uniqueness of expression. #

We finally have the following

Proposition 3.4.5. Let r, s be simple roots such that $N_{r,s} = -1$. Then the map $f = f_r$ ($= f_s$) is a field automorphism of K.

Proof : This comes from Proposition 3.4.3. and 3.4.4., as we already know that the maps f_r are bijective (for the map $\theta : X_r \longrightarrow X_r$ is a bijection from Observation 3.1.5.). ∎

From now on we shall assume that the rank ℓ of the simple algebraic group G is at least 2.

Our aim is to show that the maps f_r are all the same for every positive root r, and that this map is a field automorphism of G. Hence we need only to show that for every r, s in Φ^+ we have $f_r = f_s$, for then this map will automatically be a field automorphism, by Proposition 3.4.5..

Proposition 3.4.6. Let r, s be positive roots. Then we have

$f_r = f_s$.

Proof : As G is a simple algebraic group, its Dynkin diagram is a connected graph. Then, if α, β are simple roots, there exists a sequence of simple roots $\alpha_1,\dots,\alpha_m$, such that $\alpha = \alpha_1$, $\beta = \alpha_m$, and α_i, α_{i+1} are not orthogonal for every $i = 1,\dots,m-1$. Hence we have $N_{\alpha_i,\alpha_{i+1}} = \pm 1$. Now, in general, we have $N_{\delta,\gamma} = -N_{\gamma,\delta}$ for any δ, γ in Φ ([C$_1$] Theorem 4.1.2.), and so we can apply Proposition 3.4.3. to get

$f_{\alpha_i} = f_{\alpha_{i+1}}$ for every $i = 1,\dots,m-1$.

Therefore we obtain $f_\alpha = f_\beta$. But α, β were arbitrary simple roots, and so we can define a function f (which we already know is an automorphism of K) such that

$f = f_\alpha$ for every simple root α.

We shall show that $f = f_r$ for every positive root r, by induction on the height ht(r) of r. If ht(r) = 1, then r is a simple root, and we are done. So now suppose that ht(r) is greater than 1, and assume the result for every positive root s of height less than ht(r). By [C$_1$] Lemma 3.6.2., there exists a simple root α such that $r-\alpha$ is still a positive root. Let $r_0 = r - m\alpha$ be the first term of the α-chain through r. Then we have $m \geq 1$, by the choice of α. Also r_0 is a positive root because if we consider the decomposition $r = \sum n_\gamma \gamma$ (sum over the simple roots), then we have

$n_\gamma \geq 0$ for every simple root γ, and there must exist a simple root $\beta \neq \alpha$ such that $n_\beta \neq 0$, as $ht(r) > 1$, and r is not a simple root. Now

$r = r_0 + m\alpha$ and $m \geq 1$ imply

$$ht(r_0) < ht(r),$$

and so we get

$$f_{r_0} = f$$

by the induction assumption. Also, by the commutator formula, we get

$$x_\alpha(1)x_{r_0}(a) = x_{r_0}(a)x_\alpha(1) \cdots x_r(\eta a) \cdots,$$

where $\eta = (-1)^m M_{r_0,\alpha,m}$. But we have $M_{r_0,\alpha,m} = \pm 1$, as $r_0 - \alpha$ does not lie in Φ (by the choice of m). Hence we obtain $\eta = \pm 1$. Applying the bijection θ, we get

$$x_\alpha(1)x_{r_0}(f(a)) = x_{r_0}(f(a))x_\alpha(1) \cdots x_r(f_r(\eta a)) \cdots .$$

But, from the commutator formula, we have

$$x_\alpha(1)x_{r_0}(f(a)) = x_{r_0}(f(a))x_\alpha(1) \cdots x_r(\eta f(a)) \cdots ,$$

and therefore we are left with

$$f_r(\eta a) = \eta f(a),$$

for uniqueness of expression. Hence we obtain

$$f_r(a) = f(a),$$

because f is an automorphism of K (here we need only that f is an automorphism of the additive group of K). Therefore we have $f_r = f$. #

Thus, for any autoprojectivity φ in $\Gamma_{0,\Pi}$, we got an automorphism f of the field K such that

$$x_r(a)^\theta = x_r(f(a)) \text{ for every } r \text{ in } \Phi^+ \text{ and every } a \text{ in } K,$$

where θ is the bijection of U induced by φ.

Let us denote by F the field automorphism of G induced by f. We recall that F is defined by the map

$x_r(a)^F = x_r(f(a))$ for every r in Φ and every a in K.

We shall refer to the automorphism F simply as to the field automorphism of G induced by φ, where φ lies in $\Gamma_{0,\Pi}$.

Proposition 3.4.7. Let φ be in $\Gamma_{0,\Pi}$, and let F be the field automorphism of G induced by φ. Then we have

$$({}^u\Sigma_0)^\varphi = ({}^u\Sigma_0)^F$$

for any u in U.

Proof : Let u be in U. Let $r_1 < ... < r_N$ be any fixed total order on Φ^+. Then there exists $k_1, ..., k_N$ in K such that

$$u = x_{r_1}(k_1) ... x_{r_N}(k_N).$$

By Proposition 3.4.2. we have $u^\theta = x_{r_1}(k_1)^\theta ... x_{r_N}(k_N)^\theta$, and so

$$u^\theta = x_{r_1}(f(k_1)) ... x_{r_N}(f(k_N))$$

by Proposition 3.4.6. and the definition of f. But, by the definition of F, we have

$$u^F = x_{r_1}(f(k_1)) ... x_{r_N}(f(k_N))$$

as well, and so we obtain $u^\theta = u^F$. If now we prove that $\Sigma_0{}^F = \Sigma_0$, then we shall have

$$({}^u\Sigma_0)^\varphi = {}^{u^\theta}\Sigma_0 = {}^{u^F}\Sigma_0 = {}^{u^F}(\Sigma_0)^F = ({}^u\Sigma_0)^F,$$

and we shall be done. Now, by the definition of F, we get

$$U^F = U \text{ and } (U^-)^F = U^-,$$

and so

$$B^F = B \text{ and } (B^-)^F = B^-,$$

as $B = \mathcal{N}(U)$ and $B^- = \mathcal{N}(U^-)$. Hence we get

$$T^F = (B \wedge B^-)^F = B \wedge B^- = T.$$

Therefore we have $\Sigma_0{}^F = \Sigma_0$. #

We finally are able to prove the following

Lemma 3.4.8. Let φ be in $\Gamma_{0\Pi}$, and let the rank of G be at least 2. Then there exists a field automorphism F of G such that we have $X^{\varphi} = X^{F}$ for every face X of Δ.

<u>Proof</u> : Let F be the field automorphism of G induced by φ. We first observe that the autoprojectivity F^* of G induced by F lies in $\Gamma_{0,\Pi}$. We already know that F^* lies in $\Gamma_{B,T}$, as we proved that F fixes both B and T. From the fact that $X_r^{F} = X_r$ for every root r, it follows in particular that F fixes every parabolic subgroup of G containing B, and so F^* lies in $\Gamma_{[G/B],T}$ $= \Gamma_0$. Finally, for every simple root r, we have

$$({}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_0)^{F^*} = {}^{x_r(1)^F}\Sigma_0 = {}^{x_r(1)}\Sigma_0 ,$$

as $x_r(1)^F = x_r(f(1)) = x_r(1)$. Hence F^* lies in $\Gamma_{0,\Pi}$.

Now let X be any face of Δ. Then, by the defining axioms of a Building, there exists an apartment Σ of Δ such that B and X are both in Σ. By Proposition 3.1.1., there exists u in U such that $\Sigma = {}^u\Sigma_0$. Let us denote by ψ the autoprojectivity $\varphi(F^{-1})^*$ of G. Then ψ lies in $\Gamma_{0,\Pi}$, and we have

$$({}^u\Sigma_0)^{\psi} = {}^u\Sigma_0$$

by Proposition 3.4.7.. Therefore, by Proposition 3.2.2., we get

$$Y^{\psi} = Y \text{ for every face } Y \text{ of } {}^u\Sigma_0 .$$

In particular we obtain $X^{\psi} = X$, as X lies in ${}^u\Sigma_0$. Hence we have

$$X^{\varphi} = X^{F^*} = X^{F} .$$ #

We are now able to prove the following

<u>Theorem 3.4.9.</u> Let G be a simple algebraic group over the field $K = \bar{F}_p$, where p is any prime. Then, if the rank of G is at least 2, for every autoprojectivity φ of G there exist an inner automorphism ι_g, a graph automorphism δ, a diagonal automorphism d and a field automorphism F of G such that the autoprojectivity

$$\varphi\,((Fd\delta\iota_g)^{-1})^*$$

fixes all the faces of the building Δ canonically associated to G.

<u>Proof</u> : The result now comes immediately, by applying Lemma 2.3.2., 2.4.9.,

3.2.3. and 3.4.8. . #

Now that we know that for any autoprojectivity φ of G there exists an automorphism α of G such that φ and α act in the same way on the building Δ, we prove the uniqueness of α.

Proposition 3.4.10. Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. If α is an automorphism of G fixing every face of Δ, then α is the identity.

Proof : First, as α fixes B and B^-, it must fix also U and U^-. Now let u be in U. Then we have

$$ {}^u\Sigma_0 = ({}^u\Sigma_0)^\alpha = {}^{u^\alpha}\Sigma_0 , $$

which gives $u^\alpha = u$ by uniqueness. Similarly one can prove that for every apartment Σ of Δ containing B^-, there exists a unique u in U^-, such that $\Sigma = {}^u\Sigma_0$. Again then we get $u^\alpha = u$, for every u in U^-. It follows that

$$ g^\alpha = g \text{ for every } g \text{ in } G, $$

as $G = \langle U, U^- \rangle$. Hence α is the identity. #

Remark : The previous result holds in the more general case when G is semisimple, as the crucial point is that $G = \langle U, U^- \rangle$ which holds in fact in the case when G is semisimple.

Corollary 3.4.11. In the hypothesis of Theorem 3.4.9., for any autoprojectivity φ of G, there exists a unique automorphism α of G such that φ and α act in the same way on the building Δ.

Proof : Existence follows from Theorem 3.4.9., by taking $\alpha = Fd\delta\iota_g$. Uniqueness then follows from Proposition 3.4.10. . #

We are also able to obtain the well known structure of the automorphism group of G.

Corollary 3.4.12. In the hypothesis of Theorem 3.4.9., for every automorphism α of G, there exists an inner automorphism ι_g, a graph automorphism δ, a diagonal automorphism d and a field automorphism F of G such that $\alpha = Fd\delta\iota_g$.

Proof : By Theorem 3.4.9., there exists an inner automorphism ι_g, a graph automorphism δ, a diagonal automorphism d and a field utomorphism F of G such that α and $Fd\delta\iota_g$ act in the same way on the Building Δ. Then we must have $\alpha = Fd\delta\iota_g$ by Proposition 3.4.10.. #

As a corollary of Proposition 3.4.10., we also obtain

Corollary 3.4.13. Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. Then the homomorphism

$* : \mathrm{Aut}\, G \longrightarrow \mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G)$

which assigns to every automorphism α of G the autoprojectivity α^* of G induced by α, is injective.

Proof : Let α be an automorphism of G fixing every subgroup of G. Then, in particular, α fixes every face of Δ, and so it is the identity by Proposition 3.4.10. (This result follows also directly from a result by Cooper ([Co] 2.2.2.) that says that the homomorphism $*$ is injective for every perfect abstract group G, but in our case we can give a proof from the previous discussion). #

Remark : From the previous remark, it is then clear that Corollary 3.4.13. holds also in the case when G is semisimple (It doesn't always work for reductive groups, as one can see by taking G to be a torus, and α to be the inversion automorphism).

We shall therefore identify the groups $\mathrm{Aut}\, G$ and $(\mathrm{Aut}\, G)^*$. We also give the following

Definition 3.4.14. For every simple algebraic group G we define Γ to be the kernel of the action of the group of autoprojectivities of G on the Building Δ, i.e.

$$\Gamma = \{ \varphi \in \mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G) \mid X^{\varphi} = X \quad \forall X \in \Delta \} .$$

We shall call the elements of Γ *exceptional autoprojectivities* of G. ∎

Corollary 3.4.11. then implies

Corollary 3.4.15. Let G be a simple algebraic group over the field K. Then, if the rank of G is at least 2, we have

$$\mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G) = \Gamma \rtimes \mathrm{Aut}\, G .$$ ∎

We shall see in Chapter 5, using different arguments, that this relation holds also when G has rank 1.

Remark : The procedure we followed gives actually a constructive way to obtain the automorphism α acting on Δ as the autoprojectivity φ does, for, a posteriori, one has that if φ lies in $\Gamma_{0,\Pi}$, then the field automorphism F induced by φ acts on U in the same way as the bijection θ induced by φ does. Similarly it is possible to define a bijection θ^- on U^- and show that F coincides with θ^- on U^-. Hence F is completely determined by θ and θ^-. It is also clear that the bijection θ is an automorphism of U.

Chapter 4 The case rank G at least 3 .

In the previous chapter we showed that for any simple algebraic group G over K of rank at least 2 , the group Aut $L(G)$ is the semidirect product of the group Γ and the group Aut G . Hence the problem whether every autoprojectivity of G is induced by an automorphism of G is reduced to study in which cases the group Γ coincides with the identity subgroup of Aut $L(G)$.

In this chapter we shall show that this happens if the rank of G is at least 3 , and the characteristic p of K is not 2 .

§ 4.1 Some properties of the group Γ .

To prove Corollary 3.4.15. , we fixed a Borel subgroup B of G and a maximal torus T of G contained in B . We defined subgroups $\Gamma_{B,T}$, $\Gamma_{[G/B],T} = \Gamma_0$, $\Gamma_{0\Pi}$ and finally Γ depending on the choice of the couple (B,T) . But clearly Γ does not depend on the choice of (B,T) . It will be useful , for later use , to summarize some properties of the exceptional autoprojectivities of G (i.e. the autoprojectivities of G lying in Γ) , properties which can be directly deduced from results we got in the previous chapter .

Proposition 4.1.1. Let φ be in Γ . Then φ fixes every maximal torus and every maximal unipotent subgroup of G . Also , if $\{ X_\alpha \mid \alpha \in \Phi \}$ is the set of root-subgroups of G relative to the choice of a maximal torus T , then we have

$$X_\alpha^{\varphi} = X_\alpha$$

for every α in Φ .

Proof : Let T be a maximal torus of G . Let B be a Borel subgroup of G containing T , and let B^- be its opposite relative to T . Then we have $T = B \wedge B^-$, and so

$$T^{\varphi} = (B \wedge B^-)^{\varphi} = B \wedge B^- = T .$$

Now let U be a maximal unipotent subgroup of G. Then U is the set of unipotent elements of a Borel subgroup B of G (in fact $B = \mathcal{N}(U)$). Hence we get $U^\varphi = U$ as $B^\varphi = B$. Finally let T be a maximal torus of G, and let $\{ X_\alpha \mid \alpha \in \Phi \}$ be the set of root-subgroups of G relative to the choice of T. Let α be in Φ. Then there exists a Borel subgroup B of G containing T such that α lies in the fundamental system Π of Φ relative to the choice of B. Then we have $X_\alpha = U \wedge P^{n_0}$, where P is the parabolic subgroup $\langle B, n_\beta \rangle$, n_β is any representative in $\mathcal{N}(T)$ of the fundamental reflection s_β and β is given by the relation $w_0 s_\alpha w_0 = s_\beta$, where w_0 is the longest element of the Weyl group $\mathcal{N}(T)/T$ ([C_2] page 59). So we get

$$X_\alpha^\varphi = (U \wedge P^{n_0})^\varphi = U \wedge P^{n_0} = X_\alpha . \qquad \#$$

Observation 4.1.2. We note that in general, to show that an autoprojectivity φ of a group H is the identity, we only need to show that $\langle x \rangle^\varphi = \langle x \rangle$ for every x in H. If H is a torsion group it will be even enough to restrict our attention to prime-power elements x of H.
In our case it will be therefore enough to show that we have

$\langle s \rangle^\varphi = \langle s \rangle$ for every semisimple element s of G and

$\langle u \rangle^\varphi = \langle u \rangle$ for every unipotent element u of G. #

We shall show that if the rank of G is at least 3, then every φ in Γ fixes every subgroup of G generated by a semisimple element. To do this we first consider in general autoprojectivities of maximal tori of G.

§ 4.2 Autoprojectivities of tori.

In this paragraph we consider in general autoprojectivities of tori. Incidentally we shall also fill the gap left in Theorem 2.1.6., where we considered only non-commutative reductive groups, by showing that the autoprojectivities of a one dimensional torus are almost all not index-preserving .

So let T be a torus , of dimension ℓ say . Then T is isomorphic to the direct product of ℓ copies of the multiplicative group K^* of K . Let q be any prime . For every torsion group X we denote by X_q the q-component of X. In our case we shall have $K^*_q \cong C_{q^\infty}$ for every $q \neq p$, and $K^*_p = \{1\}$. Therefore we get

$T_q \cong C_{q^\infty} \times \dots \times C_{q^\infty}$ (ℓ copies) if $q \neq p$, and

$T_p = \{1\}$.

Proposition 4.2.1. Let T be a torus of dimension ℓ . If ℓ is at least 2 , then every autoprojectivity of T is index-preserving . If ℓ is 1 , then every non-trivial autoprojectivity of T is not index-preserving .

Proof : Suppose first $\ell \geq 2$. Let φ be an autoprojectivity of T . To show that φ is index-preserving , it is enough to show that for every x in T of prime order q , we have $|\langle x\rangle^\varphi| = q$. So let x in T have prime order q . As $\ell \geq 2$, there exists y in T such that $\langle x, y\rangle \cong C_q \times C_q$. Therefore $\langle x,y\rangle^\varphi$ is a P-group ([S] Proposition 1.4 page 11) , and it is abelian as it is contained in T . Hence $\langle x,y\rangle^\varphi$ is an elementary abelian r-group for some prime r , and we must have $r = q$, as both $\langle x,y\rangle$ and $\langle x,y\rangle^\varphi$ have $q+1$ minimal subgroups . In particular we get $|\langle x\rangle^\varphi| = q$, and φ is index-preserving .
Suppose now $\ell = 1$. Then we have $T \cong K^*$, and so $T \cong \mathrm{Dr}\, C_{q^\infty}$ (product over all primes $q \neq p$) . Hence we obtain $L(T) \cong \mathrm{Cr}\, L(C_{q^\infty})$ ([S] Theorem 4 page 5) . We observe that for every q the lattice $L(C_{q^\infty})$ is a chain ($\{1\} < C_q < C_{q^2} < \dots$) , and so C_{q^∞} has only the trivial autoprojectivity . Therefore , for every permutation σ of the set of all primes different from p , we have a unique autoprojectivity φ_σ of $\mathrm{Dr}\, C_{q^\infty}$ (product over all primes $q \neq p$) such that $C_{q^\infty}{}^{\varphi_\sigma} = C_{\sigma(q)^\infty}$, and these are all the autoprojectivities of $\mathrm{Dr}\, C_{q^\infty}$ (thus $\mathrm{Aut}\, L(\mathrm{Dr}\, C_{q^\infty}) \cong S_{\aleph}$) . In particular every non-trivial autoprojectivity of $\mathrm{Dr}\, C_{q^\infty}$ is not index-preserving , and so the same holds for T . #

By the previous proposition we can say that Theorem 2.1.6. holds also in the case when G is a connected abelian reductive algebraic group of rank at least 2, while it drastically fails if the rank is 1.

If the dimension of the torus T is at least 3 we can say much more.

Proposition 4.2.2. Let T be a torus of dimension ℓ. If ℓ is at least 3, then every autoprojectivity of T is induced by an automorphism of T.

Proof : Let φ be an autoprojectivity of T. By Proposition 4.2.1., we have

$T_q^{\varphi} = T_q$ for every prime q.

Let us denote by φ_q, for every prime q, the restriction of φ to $L(T_q)$. Then φ_q is an autoprojectivity of the abelian q-group T_q. We have

$T_q \cong C_{q^\infty} \times \dots \times C_{q^\infty}$ (ℓ copies) for every prime $q \neq p$.

Hence, as $\ell \geq 3$, for every prime $q \neq p$ there exists, by a theorem by Baer ([S] Theorem 2 page 35), an automorphism f_q of T_q inducing φ_q. Then, as

$T = \oplus T_q$ (sum over all primes q different from p),

if we define $f = \oplus f_q$ (sum over all primes q different from p) in the obvious way, we get that f is an automorphism of T inducing φ. (Note that f is not unique, as for instance the inverse automorphism induces the identity autoprojectivity). #

We recall that if X is any group, then an automorphism α of X is called a power-automorphism of X if, for every x in X, there exists n in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that $x^{\alpha} = x^{n}$. We denote by $\mathcal{P}(X)$ the group of power-automorphisms of X. It is then clear that $\mathcal{P}(X)$ is the kernel of the homomorphism

$* : \mathrm{Aut}\, X \longrightarrow \mathrm{Aut}\, L(X)$ which assigns to every automorphism α of X the autoprojectivity α^* of X induced by α.

Suppose now that φ lies in Γ, and let T be any maximal torus of G. If the rank of G is at least 3, then, by Proposition 4.1.1., 4.2.2., there exists an automorphism f of T inducing φ on $L(T)$. We shall prove that f is in fact a power-automorphism of T . To do this , we shall consider separately simple algebraic groups G of different isogeny types .

We conclude this paragraph with the following

<u>Lemma 4.2.3.</u> Let F be an automorphism of the group $K^* \times K^*$. Let us denote by D the diagonal $\{ (a,a) \mid a \in K^* \}$ of $K^* \times K^*$. If F fixes the subgroups

$K^* \times \{1\}$, $\{1\} \times K^*$ and D of $K^* \times K^*$,

then , for every α in $\mathbb{N}$, there exists n in $\{ 1,\dots,p^{\alpha}-1 \}$ such that

$$s^F = s^n$$

for every s in $\mathbb{F}_{p^\alpha}^* \times \mathbb{F}_{p^\alpha}^*$.

<u>Proof</u> : Let α be in $\mathbb{N}$. Let k be an element of K^* such that $\langle k \rangle = \mathbb{F}_{p^\alpha}^*$. Then there exist a unique n_1 and a unique n_2 in $\{ 1,\dots,p^{\alpha}-1 \}$ such that

$$(k,1)^F = (k^{n_1},1) \text{ and } (1,k)^F = (1,k^{n_2}) ,$$

as F fixes $K^* \times \{1\}$ and $\{1\} \times K^*$. But F fixes also D , and so , as $(k,k)^F = (k^{n_1},k^{n_2})$, we must have $k^{n_1} = k^{n_2}$. Hence we get $n_1 = n_2$ by the choice of n_1 , n_2 . Call this common value n . Now let s be in $\mathbb{F}_{p^\alpha}^* \times \mathbb{F}_{p^\alpha}^*$. Then there exist r , s in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that $s = (k^r,k^s)$. We therefore have

$$s^F = (k^r,1)^F(1,k^s)^F = (k^{rn},1)\ (1,k^{sn}) = (k^{rn},k^{sn}) = s^n ,$$

and we are done . #

§ 4.3 The adjoint case .

In this paragraph we shall assume that G is a simple algebraic group over K of adjoint type (Lemma 4.3.7. excluded). We shall prove that if the rank of G is at least 3 , then every autoprojectivity in Γ fixes every subgroup of G generated by a semisimple element .

We introduce some notation that we shall use also later on . Let T be any maximal torus of G. We denote by X the character group of T. Therefore X is the group of all algebraic homomorphisms from T into K^*. X is a free abelian group of rank equal the dimension of T. Let Φ be the set of roots relative to T. Let B be a Borel subgroup of G containing T and let $\Pi = \{\alpha_1,\dots,\alpha_\ell\}$ be the fundamental system of Φ relative to the choice of B. As we suppose G to be adjoint, we have $X = \mathbb{Z}\Phi$.

We consider the map

$$T \times X \longrightarrow K^*$$

given by $(t,\chi) \mapsto \chi(t)$ for every t in T and every χ in X.

For every closed subgroup S of T we define $S^\perp$ by

$$S^\perp = \{\chi \in X \mid \chi(s) = 1 \ \ \forall s \in S\},$$

and for every subgroup A of X we define $A^\perp$ by

$$A^\perp = \{t \in T \mid \alpha(t) = 1 \ \ \forall \alpha \in A\}.$$

It turns out that $A^\perp$ is a closed subgroup of T ([C_2] page 26). We are interested in the family of subgroups $\{S^\perp \mid S$ is a subtorus of $T\}$ of X.

Let us denote by $\mathcal{A}$ the set of all subgroups A of X such that X/A is torsion free (i.e. X/A is free), and by $\mathcal{S}$ the set of all subtori of T. We have the following well known result:

<u>Proposition 4.3.1.</u> The map given by the position $A \mapsto A^\perp$ for every A in $\mathcal{A}$, is a bijection of $\mathcal{A}$ onto $\mathcal{S}$, its inverse being the map $S \mapsto S^\perp$ for every S in $\mathcal{S}$. Also we have

$$\dim A^\perp = \operatorname{rank}(X/A)$$

for every A in $\mathcal{A}$.

<u>Proof</u>: This follows from the fact that for every torus S we have

$$\dim S = \operatorname{rank} \operatorname{Hom}(S,K^*),$$

and from the fact that a diagonalizable group S is a torus if and only if $\operatorname{Hom}(S,K^*)$ is a free abelian group ([Sp] Proposition 2.5.8). ∎

Definition 4.3.2. Let I be the set $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$. For every $J \subseteq I$, we denote by A_J the subgroup $<\alpha_i \mid i \in J>$ of X. ∎

Proposition 4.3.3. For every subset J of I the group $A_J^{\perp}$ is a subtorus of T of dimension $\ell - |J|$.

Proof : We have $A_J = \bigoplus_{i \in J} \mathbb{Z}\alpha_i$, and so we get

$$X/A_J = \bigoplus_{i \in I} \mathbb{Z}\alpha_i / \bigoplus_{i \in J} \mathbb{Z}\alpha_i \cong \bigoplus_{i \in J'} \mathbb{Z}\alpha_i ,$$

where $J' = I \setminus J$. Therefore A_J lies in $\mathcal{A}$, and so $A_J^{\perp}$ is a subtorus of T of dimension $\ell - |J|$ by Proposition 4.3.1.. ∎

We shall now introduce some one-dimensional subtori of T.

Definition 4.3.4. For every i in I we define

$T_{\alpha_i} = \{ t \in T \mid \alpha_j(t) = 1 \ \forall j \in I, j \neq i \}$. ∎

Proposition 4.3.5. T_{α_i} is a one-dimensional subtorus of T for every i in I.

Proof : Let i be in I. We observe that $T_{\alpha_i} = A_J^{\perp}$, where $J = I \setminus \{i\}$. Then the result follows from Proposition 4.3.3.. ∎

Proposition 4.3.6. We have $T = T_{\alpha_1} \times \dots \times T_{\alpha_\ell}$.

Proof : Let us consider the direct product $T_{\alpha_1} \times \dots \times T_{\alpha_\ell}$. This is an ℓ-dimensional torus. If now we consider the map

$\pi : T_{\alpha_1} \times \dots \times T_{\alpha_\ell} \longrightarrow T$

given by $(t_1,\dots,t_\ell) \mapsto t_1 \cdots t_\ell$ where t_i lies in T_{α_i} for every i in I, then we get that π is an algebraic homomorphism. Let $(t_1,\dots,t_\ell)$ be in $\ker \pi$. By the definition of the subtori T_{α_i}, we have

$\alpha_r(T_{\alpha_s}) = \{1\}$ for every r, s in I such that $r \neq s$.

Let us fix i in I. We get

$$1 = \alpha_i(1) = \alpha_i(t_1 \cdots t_\ell) = \alpha_i(t_i).$$

Therefore we have $\alpha_j(t_i) = 1$ for every j in I and so we must have $t_i = 1$, as G is adjoint. Hence the algebraic homomorphism π is injective. But then it must be also surjective, because $\dim T = \ell = \dim T_{\alpha_1} \times \ldots \times T_{\alpha_\ell}$. Therefore we have $T = T_{\alpha_1} \times \ldots \times T_{\alpha_\ell}$. #

Note : As far as now, we can only say that the decomposition $T = T_{\alpha_1} \times \ldots \times T_{\alpha_\ell}$ coming from the above proposition, is just of abstract groups, because we did not prove that π^{-1} is an algebraic map. In fact this is so, and this will come from the following result, that we prove in a more general context.

For the moment let us suppose that G is a semisimple algebraic group over an algebraically closed field K. Let T be a maximal torus of G, and $(\chi_1,\ldots,\chi_\ell)$, $(\gamma_1,\ldots,\gamma_\ell)$ be dual $\mathbb{Z}$-bases resp. of the character group X and of the cocharacter group Y of T, in the usual duality $X \times Y \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}$. Let us denote by T_i the subgroup $\{ t \in T \mid \chi_j(t) = 1 \text{ for every } j \neq i \}$, and by L_i the subgroup $\gamma_i(K^*)$ of T. Then both T_i and L_i are 1-dimensional subtori of T. For every $i = 1,\ldots,\ell$, we consider the algebraic homomorphisms

$\mu_i : T_i \longrightarrow K^*$ given by $\mu_i(t) = \chi_i(t)$ for every t in T_i, and

$\lambda_i : K^* \longrightarrow L_i$ given by $\lambda_i(k) = \gamma_i(k)$ for every k in K^*.

Then we have

Lemma 4.3.7. With the above notation for every $i = 1,\ldots,\ell$, we have $T_i = L_i$, and μ_i, λ_i are one the inverse of the other (in particular they are algebraic isomorphisms).

Proof : Let i be in $\{1,\ldots,\ell\}$. We recall that for every χ in X and every γ in Y, we have

$$k^{\langle\chi,\gamma\rangle} = \chi\gamma(k) \quad \text{for every } k \text{ in } K^*.$$

Suppose now that x is an element of L_i. Then there exists k in K^* such that

$x = \gamma_i(k)$. Thus, for every $j \neq i$, we get

$\chi_j(x) = \chi_j\gamma_i(k) = k^{<\chi_j, \gamma_i>} = k^0 = 1$,

so that x lies in T_i. Hence we have $L_i \leq T_i$ and so $L_i = T_i$ as they are both connected. Also we have

$\chi_i\gamma_i(k) = k^{<\chi_i, \gamma_i>} = k$ for every k in K,

so that $\chi_i\gamma_i = id_{K^*}$. We observe that χ_i is injective, as if t is in $\ker \chi_i$, we have $\chi_j(t) = 1$ for every j in $\{1,\dots,\ell\}$, so that $t = 1$. Therefore μ_i is bijective, and so we must have $\mu_i^{-1} = \lambda_i$, which also implies that λ_i is bijective with inverse μ_i. #

We now go back to the case when G is simple adjoint over $K = \overline{F}_p$. Let us denote by ξ_i the restriction to T_{α_i} of the algebraic homomorphism $\alpha_i : T \longrightarrow K^*$. We have the following

<u>Proposition 4.3.8.</u> For every i in I the map ξ_i is an algebraic isomorphism from T_{α_i} onto K^*.

<u>Proof</u> : As G is adjoint, $(\alpha_1,\dots,\alpha_\ell)$ is a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis of X. Therefore we can find in Y a dual basis $(\gamma_1,\dots,\gamma_\ell)$ of $(\alpha_1,\dots,\alpha_\ell)$. Then the result comes from Lemma 4.3.7.. #

We shall denote by ν_i the inverse of ξ_i for every i in I.

<u>Definition 4.3.9.</u> For every i, j in I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ, we define

$$S_{ij} = \Big(\bigwedge_{\substack{k\in I\\ k\neq i,j}} \ker \alpha_k\Big) \quad \text{and} \quad T_{ij} = S_{ij} \wedge \ker(\alpha_i+\alpha_j).$$

<u>Proposition 4.3.10.</u> Let i, j be elements of I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ. Then T_{ij} is a 1-dimensional subtorus of T.

<u>Proof</u> : Let us denote by A_{ij} the subgroup $<\alpha_k, \alpha_i+\alpha_j \mid k \in I, k \neq i, j>$.

Then we have

$$A_{ij} = (\bigoplus_{\substack{k \in I \\ k \neq i,j}} \mathbb{Z}\alpha_k) \oplus \mathbb{Z}(\alpha_i+\alpha_j) .$$

Hence we get

$$X/A_{ij} \cong (\mathbb{Z}\alpha_i \oplus \mathbb{Z}\alpha_j)/\, \mathbb{Z}(\alpha_i+\alpha_j) \cong \mathbb{Z} .$$

From the definition of T_{ij} , we have $T_{ij} = A_{ij}^{\perp}$, and so T_{ij} is a 1-dimensional subtorus by Proposition 4.3.1. . #

We shall now show that all the subtori of T previously defined are fixed by every element of Γ . For this purpose we shall use the following

Proposition 4.3.11. Let φ be in Γ . Then we have

$(\ker \alpha)^{\varphi} = \ker \alpha$

for every root α .

Proof : Let α be a root . We note that for every non-trivial u in the root-subgroup X_α , we have $\ker \alpha = T \wedge C(u)$. For let u be any non-trivial element of X_α . There exists a unique k in $K\setminus\{0\}$ such that $u = x_\alpha(k)$. Then , for t in T , we have

$u = tut^{-1} \iff x_\alpha(k) = x_\alpha(\alpha(t)k) \iff \alpha(t) = 1 \iff t \in \ker \alpha$.

Hence we have $\ker \alpha = T \wedge C(u)$.

Fix any non-trivial element u in X_α . By Proposition 4.1.1. , we have $X_\alpha^{\varphi} = X_\alpha$, and so there exists a non-trivial $\bar{u}$ in X_α such that $< u >^{\varphi} = < \bar{u} >$. Let now s be in $\ker \alpha$. As $T^{\varphi} = T$, there exists $\bar{s}$ in T such that $< s >^{\varphi} = < \bar{s} >$. The group $< u , s >$ is cyclic , as $(|u|, |s|) = 1$. Therefore $< \bar{u} , \bar{s} > = < u , s >^{\varphi}$ is cyclic as well , and so $\bar{s}$ lies in $C(\bar{u})$. Hence $\bar{s}$ lies in $T \wedge C(\bar{u}) = \ker \alpha$. We have so obtained $(\ker \alpha)^{\varphi} \leq \ker \alpha$. Similarly we can prove $(\ker \alpha)^{\varphi^{-1}} \leq \ker \alpha$, and so we get $(\ker \alpha)^{\varphi} = \ker \alpha$. #

Proposition 4.3.12. All the subtori T_{α_i} , T_{ij} previously defined , are fixed by every element of Γ .

Proof : It is enough to obverve that all these subtori are elements of the sublattice of $L(T)$ spanned by the set $\{ \ker \alpha \mid \alpha \in \Phi \}$, and then use Proposition 4.3.11. . ∎

We introduce , for every i , j in I such that $\alpha_i + \alpha_j$ lies in Φ , the isomorphism

$$\rho_{ij} : K^* \times K^* \to T_{\alpha_i} \times T_{\alpha_j}$$

given by the map $(a,b) \mapsto \nu_i(a)\nu_j(b^{-1})$ for every a ,b in K^* . ρ_{ij} is an algebraic isomorphism by Proposition 4.3.8. .

We have the following

Proposition 4.3.13. Let us denote by D the diagonal $\{ (k,k) \mid k \in K^* \}$ of $K^* \times K^*$. Then , for every i , j in I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ , we have

$$D^{\rho_{ij}} = T_{ij} .$$

Proof : It is enough to show that $D^{\rho_{ij}} \leq T_{ij}$, as ρ_{ij} is injective , D and T_{ij} are 1-dimensional connected algebraic groups , and ρ_{ij} is an algebraic map . So let a be an element of K^* . We have to show that the element $t = \nu_i(a)\nu_j(a^{-1})$ of T lies in T_{ij} . Let m be in I , $m \neq i$, j . Then we have

$$\alpha_m(\nu_i(a)) = \alpha_m(\nu_j(a^{-1})) = 1$$

as $\alpha_m(T_{\alpha_r}) = \{1\}$ for every $r \neq m$. Therefore t lies in S_{ij} . Also we have

$$(\alpha_i+\alpha_j)(\nu_i(a)\nu_j(a^{-1})) = \alpha_i\nu_i(a)\,\alpha_j\nu_j(a^{-1})$$

again because $\alpha_s(T_{\alpha_r}) = \{1\}$ for every $s \neq r$. But , for every s in I and for every k in K^* , we have $\alpha_s\nu_s(a) = \xi_s\nu_s(a) = a$, by the definition of ξ_s . Hence we get

$$(\alpha_i+\alpha_j)(t) = \alpha_i\nu_i(a)\,\alpha_j\nu_j(a^{-1}) = aa^{-1} = 1 .$$

So t lies in $T_{ij} = S_{ij} \wedge \ker(\alpha_i+\alpha_j)$. ∎

Let now φ be an element of Γ . Then , by Proposition 4.1.1. , for any maximal torus T of G , we have $T^{\varphi} = T$ and so , by Proposition 4.2.2. , as the dimension of T is at least 3 , there exists an automorphism f of T inducing φ on $L(T)$. We are now able to prove the following

Proposition 4.3.14. Let φ be in Γ, and let T be any maximal torus of G. Then any automorphism of T inducing φ on $L(T)$ is a power-automorphism.

Proof : Let f be an automorphism of T inducing φ on $L(T)$. Let t be in T. From Proposition 4.3.6., we have $T = T_{\alpha_1} \times \dots \times T_{\alpha_\ell}$, and so, for every i in I, there exists a unique t_i in T_{α_i} such that $t = t_1 \cdots t_\ell$. Let us denote by k_i the element $\xi_i(t_i)$ of $K^\times$ for every i in I, and let F_{p^α} be the subfield of K generated by $k_1, \dots, k_\ell$. Let also k be a generator of the multiplicative group of F_{p^α}. From Proposition 4.3.12., we have $T_{\alpha_i}{}^{\varphi} = T_{\alpha_i}$ for every i in I, and so we get

$$T_{\alpha_i}{}^{f} = T_{\alpha_i} \quad \text{for every } i \text{ in } I.$$

Hence, for every i in I, there exists a unique n_i in $\{1, \dots, p^\alpha - 1\}$ such that $\nu_i(k)^f = \nu_i(k^{n_i})$. Let now i, j be in I such that $\alpha_i + \alpha_j$ lies in Φ. By Proposition 4.3.12., we have

$$T_{ij}{}^{f} = T_{ij}.$$

We consider the automorphism $f_{ij} : T_{\alpha_i} \times T_{\alpha_j} \longrightarrow T_{\alpha_i} \times T_{\alpha_j}$ induced by f. Let us denote by F_{ij} the composite

$$\rho_{ij} f_{ij} \rho_{ij}^{-1} : K^\times \times K^\times \longrightarrow K^\times \times K^\times ,$$

where the isomorphisms ρ_{ij} are those defined above. Then F_{ij} is an automorphism of $K^\times \times K^\times$. We have $(K^\times \times \{1\})^{\rho_{ij}} = T_{\alpha_i}$, $(\{1\} \times K^\times)^{\rho_{ij}} = T_{\alpha_j}$ by the definition of ρ_{ij} and $D^{\rho_{ij}} = T_{ij}$ by Proposition 4.3.13.. From the fact that $T_{\alpha_i}{}^{f} = T_{\alpha_i}$, $T_{\alpha_j}{}^{f} = T_{\alpha_j}$ and $T_{ij}{}^{f} = T_{ij}$, it follows that

$$(K^\times \times \{1\})^{F_{ij}} = K^\times \times \{1\}, \quad (\{1\} \times K^\times)^{F_{ij}} = \{1\} \times K^\times \quad \text{and} \quad D^{F_{ij}} = D.$$

Hence we can apply Lemma 4.2.3. to obtain n in $\mathbb{N}$ such that

$$(a,b)^{F_{ij}} = (a,b)^n \quad \text{for every } a, b \text{ in } F_{p^\alpha}{}^\times.$$

We therefore get $(k,1)^n = (k,1)^{F_{ij}} = (k^{n_i},1)$ and $(1,k)^n = (1,k)^{F_{ij}} = (1,k^{n_j})$. It follows that

$$n_i \equiv n \equiv n_j \mod p^\alpha - 1,$$

and so $n_i = n_j$ by the choice of n_i and n_j. Hence we have $n_i = n_j$ for every i, j in I such that $\alpha_i + \alpha_j$ lies in Φ. As the Dynkin diagram of G is connected, we conclude that $n_i = n_j$ for every i, j in I. Call this common value n, so that we have

$\nu_i(k)^f = \nu_i(k^n)$ for every i in I.

Now we go back to our element t in T. We had $t = t_1 \cdots t_\ell$, with t_i in T_{α_i} for every i in I, and we denoted by k_i the element $\xi_i(t_i)$. There exists $r_1,\dots,r_\ell$ in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that $k_i = k^{r_i}$ for every i in I. Hence we obtain

$$t = t_1 \cdots t_\ell = \nu_1(k_1) \cdots \nu_\ell(k_\ell) = \nu_1(k^{r_1}) \dots \nu_\ell(k^{r_\ell}),$$

and so

$$t^f = \nu_1(k^{r_1})^f \dots \nu_\ell(k^{r_\ell})^f = \nu_1(k^{nr_1}) \dots \nu_\ell(k^{nr_\ell}) = t_1^n \cdots t_\ell^n = t^n.$$

Therefore f is a power-automorphism of T. #

Corollary 4.3.15. Let s be a semisimple element of the simple algebraic group of adjoint type G of rank at least 3. Then we have

$$\langle s \rangle^\varphi = \langle s \rangle$$

for every φ in Γ.

Proof : Let φ be in Γ. There exists a maximal torus T of G such that s lies in T. By Proposition 4.2.2., 4.3.14., there exists a power-automorphism f of T inducing φ on $\mathcal{L}(T)$. Therefore we have $\langle s \rangle^\varphi = \langle s \rangle^f = \langle s \rangle$. #

In the next paragraph we shall prove that the same result holds also when G is simply-connected.

§ 4.4 The simply-connected case.

In this paragraph we shall always assume that G is a simply-connected simple algebraic group of rank at least 3.

First we introduce some notation.

Let T be any maximal torus of G. We denote by Y the cocharacter group of T, i.e. the group $\mathrm{Hom}(K^*, T)$ of all algebraic homomorphisms of K^* into T. Let Φ be the set of roots of G relative to T, let B be a Borel subgroup of

G containing T and let $\Pi = \{\alpha_1,\ldots,\alpha_\ell\}$ be the fundamental system of Φ relative to the choice of B. For every α in Φ there is a unique $\alpha^\vee$ in Y such that $<\alpha,\alpha^\vee> = 2$ in the duality $X \times Y \to \mathbb{Z}$ ([Sp] 8.1.2., 9.1.5., [C_2] page 19). $\alpha^\vee$ is called the coroot corresponding to α. If we denote by $\Phi^\vee$ the set of coroots, then the map $\alpha \mapsto \alpha^\vee$ defines a bijection between Φ and $\Phi^\vee$. It turns out that the set $\Pi^\vee = \{\alpha_1^\vee,\ldots,\alpha_\ell^\vee\}$ is a fundamental system of $\Phi^\vee$ ([C_1] page 50). In our case, as G is simply-connected, we have $Y = \mathbb{Z}\Phi^\vee$, and so $\Pi^\vee$ is a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis of Y.

Proposition 4.4.1. Let $(\gamma_1,\ldots,\gamma_\ell)$ be any $\mathbb{Z}$-basis of Y. Then we have

$T = \gamma_1(K^*) \times \cdots \times \gamma_\ell(K^*)$.

Proof : This follows from the fact that there exists an isomorphism $Y \otimes K^* \to T$ sending $\gamma \otimes k$ to $\gamma(k)$ for every γ in Y and every k in K^* ([C_2] Proposition 3.1.2.). #

Definition 4.4.2. For every α in Φ, we define $L_{\alpha^\vee}$ to be the subgroup $\alpha^\vee(K^*)$ of T. #

$L_{\alpha^\vee}$ is therefore a 1-dimensional subtorus of T for every α in Φ.

Corollary 4.4.3. We have $T = L_{\alpha_1^\vee} \times \cdots \times L_{\alpha_\ell^\vee}$.

Proof : This follows from Proposition 4.4.1., as $\{\alpha_1^\vee,\ldots,\alpha_\ell^\vee\}$ is a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis of Y. #

As we noticed for the decomposition $T = T_{\alpha_1} \times \ldots \times T_{\alpha_\ell}$ in the adjoint case, for the moment we can only say that the decomposition $T = L_{\alpha_1^\vee} \times \cdots \times L_{\alpha_\ell^\vee}$ we got in the previous proposition is of abstract groups. In fact this is a decomposition of T as an algebraic group, as this incidentally will come from the following argument.

We need an explicit bijective algebraic homomorphism from K^* into $L_{\alpha_i^\vee}$ for every i in I.

Definition 4.4.4. For every i in I, we denote by ζ_i the map $K^* \longrightarrow L_{\alpha_i^\vee}$ given by $\zeta_i(k) = \alpha_i^\vee(k)$ for every k in K^*. ∎

It is then clear that ζ_i is an algebraic epimorphism for every i in I. But, in view of Lemma 4.3.7., we can say even more.

Proposition 4.4.5. ζ_i is an algebraic isomorphism for every i in I.

Proof : As G is simply-connected, $\{\alpha_1^\vee,\ldots,\alpha_\ell^\vee\}$ is a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis of Y, and so we can find in X a dual basis $\{\chi_1,\ldots,\chi_\ell\}$ of $\{\alpha_1^\vee,\ldots,\alpha_\ell^\vee\}$. Then the result comes from Lemma 4.3.7.. ∎

For every i, j in I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ, we define the map

$$\mu_{ij} : K^* \times K^* \longrightarrow L_{\alpha_i^\vee} \times L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$$

by $(a,b) \mapsto \zeta_i(a)\zeta_j(b)$ for every a, b in K^*.

Then, by Proposition 4.4.5., μ_{ij} is an algebraic isomorphism for every i, j in I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ.

Proposition 4.4.6. If we denote by D the diagonal $\{ (k,k) \mid k \in K^*\}$ of $K^* \times K^*$, then, for every i, j in I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ, we have

$$D^{\mu_{ij}} = L_{\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee} .$$

Proof : First we note that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ if and only if $\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee$ lies in $\Phi^\vee$, as we have

$$< \alpha_i,\alpha_j^\vee > = 0 \iff < \alpha_j,\alpha_i^\vee > = 0 \quad ([C_2] \text{ page } 23) .$$

Therefore $L_{\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee}$ is well defined. But then we have

$$L_{\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee} = (\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee)(K^*) ,$$

which coincides with $D^{\mu_{ij}}$ by the definition of μ_{ij} . #

We shall now show that all the subtori $L_{\alpha^\vee}$ of T previously defined are fixed by every element of Γ . For this purpose we shall use the following

Proposition 4.4.7. Let α be in Φ . Then we have

$$L_{\alpha^\vee} = T \wedge \langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle .$$

Proof : $L_{\alpha^\vee}$ is a 1-dimensional torus , and so it is a maximal torus of $\langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle$, which is a simple algebraic group of rank 1 . Let n_α be any representative of the reflection w_α of $W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$ in $\langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle$ ([C$_2$] page 19) . Then we have the Bruhat decomposition

$$\langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle = L_{\alpha^\vee} X_\alpha \cup L_{\alpha^\vee} X_\alpha n_\alpha X_\alpha$$

of $\langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle$. But $L_{\alpha^\vee} X_\alpha n_\alpha X_\alpha \cap T = \emptyset$, as $B \cap Bn_\alpha B = \emptyset$, and so we have

$$T \wedge \langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle \subseteq T \cap (L_{\alpha^\vee} X_\alpha) = L_{\alpha^\vee} .$$

Hence we get

$$L_{\alpha^\vee} = T \wedge \langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle ,$$

as clearly $L_{\alpha^\vee} \subseteq T \wedge \langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle$. #

Proposition 4.4.8. Let α be in Φ . Then , for every φ in Γ , we have

$$L_{\alpha^\vee}{}^{\varphi} = L_{\alpha^\vee} .$$

Proof : Let φ be in Γ . By Proposition 4.4.7. we have $L_{\alpha^\vee} = T \wedge \langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle$, and so we get

$$L_{\alpha^\vee}{}^{\varphi} = T^{\varphi} \wedge \langle X_\alpha{}^{\varphi}, X_{-\alpha}{}^{\varphi} \rangle = T \wedge \langle X_\alpha , X_{-\alpha} \rangle = L_{\alpha^\vee} ,$$

by Proposition 4.1.1. . #

Let now φ be an element of Γ . Then , by Proposition 4.1.1. , for any maximal torus T of G , we have $T^{\varphi} = T$ and so , by Proposition 4.2.2. , as the dimension of T is at least 3 , there exists an automorphism f of T

inducing φ on $L(T)$. We are now able to prove the following

<u>Proposition 4.4.9.</u> Let φ be in Γ, and let T be any maximal torus of G. Then any automorphism of T inducing φ on $L(T)$ is a power-automorphism.

<u>Proof</u> : The proof is similar to the proof of Proposition 4.3.14. . The only difference is that here, for every i, j in I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ, we use the automorphism V_{ij} of $K^* \times K^*$ given by the composite $\mu_{ij} f_{ij} \mu_{ij}^{-1}$ (where the isomorphism μ_{ij} is the one defined above, and $f_{ij} : L_{\alpha_i^\vee} \times L_{\alpha_j^\vee} \longrightarrow L_{\alpha_i^\vee} \times L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$ is the automorphism induced by f). We have

$$(K^*\times\{1\})^{\mu_{ij}} = L_{\alpha_i^\vee} \text{ and } (\{1\}\times K^*)^{\mu_{ij}} = L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$$

by the definition of μ_{ij} and

$$D^{\mu_{ij}} = L_{\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee},$$

by Proposition 4.4.6. . From the fact that $L_{\alpha_i^\vee}{}^f = L_{\alpha_i^\vee}$, $L_{\alpha_j^\vee}{}^f = L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$ and $L_{\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee}{}^f = L_{\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee}$, it follows that

$$(K^*\times\{1\})^{V_{ij}} = K^*\times\{1\},\ (\{1\}\times K^*)^{V_{ij}} = \{1\}\times K^* \text{ and } D^{V_{ij}} = D.$$

Then we can proceed as in the proof of Proposition 4.3.14. . #

<u>Corollary 4.4.10.</u> Let s be a semisimple element of the simple simply-connected algebraic group G of rank at least 3. Then we have

$$< s >^\varphi = < s >$$

for every φ in Γ.

<u>Proof</u> : Let φ be in Γ. There exists a maximal torus T of G such that s lies in T. By Proposition 4.2.2. , 4.4.9. , there exists a power-automorphism f of T inducing φ on $L(T)$. Therefore we have $< s >^\varphi = < s >^f = < s >$. #

In the next paragraph we shall deal with the cases left out so far.

§ 4.5 The case when G is neither adjoint nor simply-connected .

In this paragraph we finally consider the case when G is neither adjoint nor simply-connected . Such a group is therefore forced to have rank at least 3 , and to have type A_ℓ or D_ℓ . In particular , the Dynkin diagram of G has only single bonds .

Let T be a maximal torus of G . Let X , Φ , Π , Y , $\Phi^\vee$ and $\Pi^\vee$ be defined as in the previous paragraph . For every subgroup A of Y we denote by $A^\wedge$ the subtorus $<\gamma(K^*) \mid \gamma \in A>$ of T . $A^\wedge$ is a subtorus as it is closed and connected , being the union of closed and connected subgroups of T . Note that we have

$$A^\wedge = a_1(K^*) \cdots a_r(K^*)$$

whenever $\{a_1,\ldots,a_r\}$ is a set of generators of A . We have the following

<u>Proposition 4.5.1.</u> Let A be a subgroup of Y of rank r . Then the dimension of $A^\wedge$ is r . In particular we have

$$T = \alpha_1{}^\vee(K^*) \cdots \alpha_\ell{}^\vee(K^*) .$$

<u>Proof</u> : From the structure theorem of finitely generated abelian groups , there exists a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis $(\gamma_1,\ldots,\gamma_\ell)$ of Y and positive integers n_1 , ..., n_r , such that $(n_1\gamma_1,\ldots,n_r\gamma_r)$ is a $\mathbb{Z}$-basis of A . Then we have

$$T = \gamma_1(K^*) \times \cdots \times \gamma_\ell(K^*) ,$$

by Proposition 4.4.1. , and so $A^\wedge = n_1\gamma_1(K^*) \times \cdots \times n_r\gamma_r(K^*)$ as K^* is divisible and n_i are non-zero . Hence the dimension of $A^\wedge$ is r . In particular, as $\alpha_1{}^\vee,\ldots,\alpha_\ell{}^\vee$ are linearly independent , we have rank $<\alpha_1{}^\vee,\ldots,\alpha_\ell{}^\vee> = \ell$, and so $\alpha_1{}^\vee(K^*) \cdots \alpha_\ell{}^\vee(K^*) = T$. ∎

<u>Remark</u> . The decomposition $T = \alpha_1{}^\vee(K^*) \cdots \alpha_\ell{}^\vee(K^*)$ is in general not a direct decomposition of T , as one can see for instance when G has type A_ℓ . (It is enough to take the non-adjoint , non-simply-connected algebraic group of type A_3) .

In the following we shall use the same notation we introduced in the previous paragraph . Therefore , for every α in Φ we have the 1-dimensional subtorus $L_{\alpha^\vee} = \alpha^\vee(K^\times)$ of T , and for every i in I , the surjective algebraic homomorphism

$$\zeta_i : K^\times \longrightarrow L_{\alpha_i^\vee}$$

given by the map $\zeta_i(k) = \alpha_i^\vee(k)$ for every k in $K^\times$. By Proposition 4.5.1. , we have $T = L_{\alpha_1^\vee} \cdots L_{\alpha_\ell^\vee}$. In the previous paragraph we also had the isomorphism

$$\mu_{ij} : K^\times \times K^\times \longrightarrow L_{\alpha_i^\vee} \times L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$$

for every i , j in I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ . In our case we do not know a priori if the product $L_{\alpha_i^\vee} L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$ is direct . Anyway we can still define

$$\mu_{ij} : K^\times \times K^\times \longrightarrow L_{\alpha_i^\vee} L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$$

by the map $(a,b) \mapsto \zeta_i(a)\zeta_j(b)$ for every a , b in $K^\times$, so that μ_{ij} is a surjective algebraic homomorphism . We shall show that in fact the map μ_{ij} is injective (hence , in particular , $L_{\alpha_i^\vee} L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$ is a direct product) . This will allow us to use again Lemma 4.2.3. to show that every autoprojectivity φ in Γ fixes every subgroup of T generated by a semisimple element of G .

<u>Proposition 4.5.2.</u> Let i , j be elements of I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ . Then the map μ_{ij} is a bijective algebraic homomorphism . In particular ζ_i is injective for every i in I .

<u>Proof</u> : We already know that μ_{ij} is a surjective algebraic homomorphism . We shall prove that it is injective . Let (a,b) be in $\ker \mu_{ij}$. Then , by the definition of μ_{ij} and of ζ_i , ζ_j , we have $\alpha_i^\vee(a)\alpha_j^\vee(b) = 1$. From the fact that the rank of G is at least 3 , and that the Dynkin diagram of G has only single bonds , there exists k in I , $k \neq i, j$, such that we have one of the following subgraphs

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \bullet & - & \bullet & - & \bullet \\ k & & i & & j \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccccc} \bullet & - & \bullet & - & \bullet \\ k & & j & & i \end{array}$$

Without loss of generality, we may suppose we are in the first situation. Therefore we have $<\alpha_k, \alpha_i^\vee> = -1$, $<\alpha_k, \alpha_j^\vee> = 0$ and $<\alpha_i, \alpha_j^\vee> = -1$ ([C_2] page 23). We recall that for every r, s in I we have

$$\alpha_r(\alpha_s^\vee(c)) = c^{<\alpha_r, \alpha_s^\vee>} \quad \text{for every } c \text{ in } K^*.$$

We therefore have

$$1 = \alpha_k(1) = \alpha_k(\alpha_i^\vee(a)\alpha_j^\vee(b)) = a^{-1},$$

and so we get $a = 1$, and consequently $\alpha_j^\vee(b) = 1$. But then we have

$$1 = \alpha_i(1) = \alpha_i(\alpha_j^\vee(b)) = b^{-1},$$

which gives $b = 1$. Hence we obtain $(a,b) = (1,1)$, and μ_{ij} is injective. Now let i be in I. As the Dynkin diagram of G is connected, there exists j in I such that $\alpha_i + \alpha_j$ lies in Φ. But then we proved that the map μ_{ij} is injective, and so ζ_i must be injective. #

We now observe that the equation $L_{\alpha^\vee} = T \wedge <X_\alpha, X_{-\alpha}>$ for every α in Φ that we proved in Proposition 4.4.7., holds independently of the isogeny class of G. Hence in our case we still have $L_{\alpha^\vee}{}^\varphi = L_{\alpha^\vee}$ for every α in Φ. We are now able to prove the following

<u>Proposition 4.5.3.</u> Let φ be in Γ, and let T be any maximal torus of G. Then any automorphism of T inducing φ on $L(T)$ is a power-automorphism.

<u>Proof</u>: Let f be an automorphism of T inducing φ on $L(T)$. Let t be in T. By Proposition 4.5.1., for every i in I there exists an element t_i in $L_{\alpha_i^\vee}$ such that $t = t_1 \cdots t_\ell$ (this decomposition being possibly not unique). By Proposition 4.5.2., the homomorphism ζ_i is injective for every i in I, and so, for every i in I, there exists a unique k_i in K^* such that $\zeta_i(k_i) = t_i$. We can now use the same procedure we use in the adjoint and simply-connected case. So let F_{p^α} be the subfield of K generated by $k_1, \ldots, k_\ell$. Let also k be a generator of the multiplicative group of F_{p^α}. For every i in I,

we have $L_{\alpha_i^\vee}^{\varphi} = L_{\alpha_i^\vee}$, and so $L_{\alpha_i^\vee}^{f} = L_{\alpha_i^\vee}$. Therefore , for every i in I , there exists a unique n_i in $\{1,\dots,p^{\alpha}-1\}$ such that $\zeta_i(k)^f = \zeta_i(k^{n_i})$. For every i , j in I such that $\alpha_i+\alpha_j$ lies in Φ , we consider the automorphisms $f_{ij} : L_{\alpha_i^\vee} \times L_{\alpha_j^\vee} \rightarrow L_{\alpha_i^\vee} \times L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$ induced by f , and we denote by V_{ij} the automorphism $\mu_{ij} f_{ij} \mu_{ij}^{-1}$ of $K^{\times} \times K^{\times}$. From the fact that $L_{\alpha_i^\vee}^{f} = L_{\alpha_i^\vee}$, $L_{\alpha_j^\vee}^{f} = L_{\alpha_j^\vee}$ and $L_{\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee}^{f} = L_{\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee}$, it follows that

$$(K^{\times}\times\{1\})^{V_{ij}} = K^{\times}\times\{1\} , \ (\{1\}\times K^{\times})^{V_{ij}} = \{1\}\times K^{\times} \text{ and } D^{V_{ij}} = D$$

(where , as usual , D denotes the diagonal of $K^{\times} \times K^{\times}$. Note that we still have $D^{\mu_{ij}} = L_{\alpha_i^\vee+\alpha_j^\vee}$, as we proved in Proposition 4.4.6. for the simply-connected case) . Hence , by Lemma 4.2.3. , and the connectedness of the Dynkin diagram of G , we get $n_i = n_j$ for every i , j in I . Call this common value n , so that we have

$$\zeta_i(k)^f = \zeta_i(k^n) \text{ for every } i \text{ in } I .$$

We had $t = t_1 \cdots t_\ell$, with t_i in $L_{\alpha_i^\vee}$ for every i in I , and we denoted by k_i the unique element of $K^{\times}$ such that $\zeta_i(k_i) = t_i$. But then , as we showed in the proof of Proposition 4.3.14. , there exist $r_1,\dots,r_\ell$ in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that $k_i = k^{r_i}$ for every i in I . Hence we obtain

$$t = t_1 \cdots t_\ell = \zeta_1(k_1) \cdots \zeta_\ell(k_\ell) = \zeta_1(k^{r_1}) \dots \zeta_\ell(k^{r_\ell}) ,$$

and so

$$t^f = \zeta_1(k^{r_1})^f \dots \zeta_\ell(k^{r_\ell})^f = \zeta_1(k^{nr_1}) \dots \zeta_\ell(k^{nr_\ell}) = t_1^n \cdots t_\ell^n = t^n .$$

Therefore f is a power-automorphism of T . #

Corollary 4.5.4. Let s be a semisimple element of the simple algebraic group G , where G is neither adjoint , nor simply-connected . Then we have

$$\langle s \rangle^{\varphi} = \langle s \rangle$$

for every φ in Γ .

Proof : Let φ be in Γ . There exists a maximal torus T of G such that s lies in T . By Proposition 4.2.2. , 4.5.3. , there exists a power-automorphism f of T inducing φ on $\mathcal{L}(T)$. Therefore we have $\langle s \rangle^{\varphi} = \langle s \rangle^{f} = \langle s \rangle$. #

In the next paragraph we shall summarise the results so far obtained, and we finally deal with unipotent subgroups of G.

§ 4.6 The general case.

In this paragraph we prove that if G is a simple algebraic group over K of rank at least 3 and if the characteristic of K is not 2, then the group Γ coincides with the identity subgroup of Aut $L(G)$, i.e. we have

Aut $L(G)$ = Aut G.

As we noted before, to show that $\Gamma = \{1\}$, it is enough to show that

$<s>^{\varphi} = <s>$ and $<u>^{\varphi} = <u>$

for every φ in Γ, every semisimple element s of G and every unipotent element u of G. We have already proved the following

Proposition 4.6.1. Let s be a semisimple element of the simple algebraic group G. Then, if the rank of G is at least 3, we have

$<s>^{\varphi} = <s>$

for every φ in Γ.

Proof: This follows from Corollary 4.3.15., 4.4.10. and 4.5.4.. #

We are now interested in the behaviour of subgroups generated by a unipotent element under the action of Γ. We shall make use of the classification of unipotent classes of G.

Lemma 4.6.2. Let G be a simple algebraic group over an algebraically closed field. Then every unipotent element u of G is conjugate under G to its inverse u^{-1}.

Proof: We can give a proof from the classification of unipotent conjugacy classes if the characteristic of the field is 0 or a good prime. So let u be a unipotent element of G. From the Bala-Carter theorem ([C_2] Theorem 5.9.6.) and the results of Pommerening ([P_1], [P_2]) (we recall that the classification of unipotent classes is independent of the isogeny class of G), there exists a Levi subgroup L of G and a parabolic subgroup P of the derived subgroup L' of L, such that u lies in the unique conjugacy class C of L' such that $C \cap R_u(P)$ is open and dense in $R_u(P)$ ([C_2] Note on page 132). In the following we shall denote by U the unipotent radical $R_u(P)$ of P. Now we consider the inversion map

$\varepsilon : L' \to L'$ given by $x \mapsto x^{-1}$ for every x in L'.

This map is an automorphism of affine varieties. Let $\{C_1, \ldots, C_k\}$ be the (finite) set of unipotent conjugacy classes of L'. Then ε permutes this set, as v is unipotent $\Leftrightarrow$ v^{-1} is unipotent, and $v \sim v' \Leftrightarrow v^{-1} \sim v'^{-1}$. Now $C \cap U$ is open and dense in U, and so $(C \cap U)^{-1}$ must be open and dense in U, as ε is a homeomorphism of topological spaces, and $U^{-1} = U$. But $(C \cap U)^{-1} = C^{-1} \cap U^{-1}$ $= C^{-1} \cap U$, hence we must have $C^{-1} = C$, as C is the unique conjugacy class C of L' such that $C \cap U$ is open and dense in U, and C^{-1} satisfies this condition as well. Therefore u^{-1} lies in C, which implies $u \sim u^{-1}$ in L'. In particular u and u^{-1} are conjugate in G. If p is a bad prime the classification of unipotent conjugacy classes may be different ([C_2] § 5.11). However it has been shown by J.N. Spaltenstein (private communication) that u is always conjugate to u^{-1} in this case also. ∎

From the previous important result we get the following

Proposition 4.6.3. Let G be a simple algebraic group over K. Then, for every unipotent element u of G, there exists an element g of G such that $gug^{-1} = u^{-1}$ and the order of g is a power of 2.

Proof: Let u be a unipotent element of G. By Lemma 4.6.2., there exists an element h of G such that $huh^{-1} = u^{-1}$. Let $2^a m$ be the order of h, with $2 \nmid m$. Then, if we take $g = h^m$, we have $gug^{-1} = u^{(-1)^m} = u^{-1}$, and the order of g is 2^a. ∎

We can finally prove

Proposition 4.6.4. Let G be a simple algebraic group over K of rank at least 3, and let u be a unipotent element of G. Then, if the characteristic p of K is not 2, we have

$$< u >^{\varphi} = < u >$$

for every φ in Γ.

Proof : By Proposition 4.6.3., there exists an element g in G such that $gug^{-1} = u^{-1}$ and the order of g is a power of 2. As $p \neq 2$, both g and gu are semisimple elements of G (note that $(gu)^2 = g^2$). Therefore, from Proposition 4.6.1., we have $< g >^{\varphi} = < g >$ and $< gu >^{\varphi} = < gu >$ for every φ in Γ. Hence we get

$$< g,u >^{\varphi} = < g, gu >^{\varphi} = < g, gu > = < g,u > \quad \text{for every } \varphi \text{ in } \Gamma .$$

But then we must have $< u >^{\varphi} = < u >$ for every φ in Γ, as $< u >$ is the unique p-Sylow subgroup of the group $< g,u >$, and φ is index-preserving. #

We are now able to prove the announced

Theorem 4.6.5. Let G be a simple algebraic group over the field $K = \bar{F}_p$. Then, if the rank of G is at least 3, and the characteristic of K is not 2, every autoprojectivity of G is induced by a unique automorphism of G.

Proof : We already know that it is enough to prove that the subgroup Γ of $\mathrm{Aut}\, L(G)$ coincides with the identity subgroup of $\mathrm{Aut}\, L(G)$, and furthermore that it is enough to show that $< s >^{\varphi} = < s >$ and $< u >^{\varphi} = < u >$ for every φ in Γ, every semisimple element s of G and every unipotent element u of G. But then this follows from Proposition 4.6.1. and 4.6.4.. #

In the next chapters we shall deal with the case when the rank of G is less than 3.

Chapter 5 The case rank G less than 3 .

In the previous chapter we proved that for simple algebraic groups of rank at least 3, in odd characteristic , every autoprojectivity is induced by an automorphism . We made a crucial use of the hypothesis on the rank to be able to use a theorem by Baer . Here we consider groups of rank 1 or 2 . In this case the above mentioned theorem by Baer drastically fails . Nevertheless we are able to prove the same result we proved for rank $G \geq 3$, for groups of rank 1 and of rank 2 , if we exclude the case when G has type A_2 .

§ 5.1 Simple algebraic groups of rank 1 or 2 .

We give a description of groups of rank 1 or 2 . First we consider the case when G has rank 1 . Then there are just two possibilities :

either G is simply-connected , and in this case G is isomorphic as an algebraic group to the special linear group $SL_2(K)$,

or G is adjoint , and in this case G is isomorphic as an algebraic group to the projective general linear group $PGL_2(K)$.

Note that the algebraic groups $SL_2(K)$ and $PGL_2(K)$ are never isomorphic as algebraic groups , even when the characteristic of K is 2 , i.e. when $SL_2(K)$ and $PGL_2(K)$ are isomorphic as abstract groups .

Suppose now that G has rank 2 . Then G has type A_2 , B_2 or G_2 . If G has type A_2 or B_2 , then there are two possibilities : either G is simply-connected or G is adjoint . We have

$(A_2)_{sc} = SL_3(K)$ and $(A_2)_{ad} = PGL_3(K)$,

while

$(B_2)_{sc}$ is the symplectic group $Sp_4(K)$ and $(B_2)_{ad}$ is the projective conformal symplectic group $PCSp_4(K)$.

Finally , if G is the exceptional group of type G_2 , then there is only one possibility for G, which is both simply-connected and adjoint.

We make the following

Observation 5.1.1. Our aim is to study the group $\mathrm{Aut}\, L(G)$. But clearly our aim will be achieved if we determine the group $\mathrm{Aut}\, L(\bar{G})$ where $\bar{G}$ is any abstract group isomorphic to our given algebraic group G. Now, if G is any simple algebraic group, there exists an isogeny $\pi : G \longrightarrow G_{ad}$, where G_{ad} is the adjoint simple algebraic group of the same type of G. We have $\ker \pi = Z(G)$, and so $G/Z(G)$ is isomorphic to G_{ad} as an abstract group. Note that $G/Z(G)$ has in a natural way the structure of an algebraic group (as a quotient of an algebraic group over a closed normal subgroup). But $G/Z(G)$ and G_{ad} are in general not isomorphic as algebraic groups, as one can see by taking $G = SL_2(K)$, $G_{ad} = PGL_2(K)$ and K of characteristic 2. Nevertheless we have $G/Z(G) \cong G_{ad}$ (as abstract groups) and so every autoprojectivity of $G/Z(G)$ is induced by an automorphism of $G/Z(G)$ if and only if every autoprojectivity of G_{ad} is induced by an automorphism of G_{ad}. #

In view of the previous observation, we introduce the abstract groups

$$PSL_2(K) = SL_2(K)/Z(SL_2(K)) \text{ and } PSp_4(K) = Sp_4(K)/Z(Sp_4(K)).$$

Hence we have

$$PGL_2(K) = (A_1)_{ad} \cong PSL_2(K) \quad \text{and} \quad PCSp_4(K) = (B_2)_{ad} \cong PSp_4(K),$$

as abstract groups.

§ 5.2 The case rank $G = 1$.

In this paragraph we consider groups of rank 1. Therefore either G is isomorphic to $SL_2(K)$ or to $PGL_2(K)$. We shall first determine the group

Aut $L(PSL_2(K))$ and so, by Observation 5.1.1., we shall automatically determine the group Aut $L(PGL_2(K))$. We recall the following result by C. Metelli (cf. [M_1]).

Let $q = p^f$, where p is a prime and f is any natural number. Then, if q is at least 4, for every projectivity τ of the simple group $PSL_2(q)$ onto a group H, there exists a unique isomorphism $\alpha : PSL_2(q) \longrightarrow H$ inducing τ.

We can now prove

Theorem 5.2.1. Let φ be an autoprojectivity of $PSL_2(K)$. Then there exists a unique automorphism of $PSL_2(K)$ inducing φ.

Proof : Let us denote by Z the centre of $SL_2(K)$. For every n in $\mathbb{N}$, we denote by G_n the finite subgroup $SL_2(p^{n!})/Z$ of $PSL_2(K)$ (This matches a definition we gave in chapter 2). Then G_n coincides with $PSL_2(p^{n!})$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$. We have

$$G_n \leq G_{n+1} \quad \text{for every } n \text{ in } \mathbb{N}\text{, and}$$

$$\bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} G_n = PSL_2(K) \quad .$$

For every n in $\mathbb{N}$, we consider the restrictions

$$\varphi_n : L(G_n) \longrightarrow L(G_n^{\varphi}) \quad \text{induced by } \varphi .$$

Therefore, for every n in $\mathbb{N}$, φ_n is a projectivity of G_n onto G_n^{φ}, and so, by Metelli 's result, for every $n = 2,3,...$, there exists a unique isomorphism

$$\alpha_n : G_n \longrightarrow G_n^{\varphi}$$

inducing φ_n. Let n be in $\mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 2$. We have

$$G_n^{\alpha_{n+1}} = G_n^{\varphi_{n+1}} = G_n^{\varphi} = G_n^{\varphi_n},$$

so we can define $\beta_n : G_n \longrightarrow G_n^{\varphi}$ by the rule $g^{\beta_n} = g^{\alpha_{n+1}}$ for every g in G_n. Then β_n is an isomorphism between G_n and G_n^{φ} inducing φ_n. Therefore we must have $\beta_n = \alpha_n$ by the uniqueness of α_n. Hence we have

$$g^{\alpha_n} = g^{\alpha_{n+1}} \text{ for every } g \text{ in } G_n ,$$

for every n in $\mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 2$. This enables us to define the map

$$\alpha : PSL_2(K) \longrightarrow PSL_2(K)$$

by $g^{\alpha} = g^{\alpha_n}$ for g in $PSL_2(K)$, where n is any natural number greater than 1 such that g lies in G_n . α is clearly an injective homomorphism , and it is also surjective , as $\bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} G_n^{\varphi} = \bigvee_{n \in \mathbb{N}} G_n^{\varphi} = (\bigvee_{n \in \mathbb{N}} G_n)^{\varphi} = PSL_2(K)$.

Hence α is an automorphism of $PSL_2(K)$. Let X be a finite subgroup of $PSL_2(K)$. Then there exists n in $\mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 2$, such that $X \leq G_n$. We have

$$X^{\alpha} = X^{\alpha_n} = X^{\varphi_n} = X^{\varphi} .$$

This is enough to say that α induces φ , as every subgroup of $PSL_2(K)$ is the union of a family of finite subgroups of $PSL_2(K)$.
Uniqueness of α follows from the fact that the group of power-automorphisms of a perfect group is the identity group . #

We have therefore also proved that if G is a simple adjoint algebraic group of rank 1 over K , then every autoprojectivity of G is induced by a unique automorphism of G , i.e.

$$\mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G) = \mathrm{Aut}\, G .$$

We shall now consider the other possibility for groups of rank 1 , i.e. the case when $G = SL_2(K)$. We need some preliminary results .

<u>Proposition 5.2.2.</u> Let G be a connected reductive algebraic group over K . Then we have

$$Z(G)^{\varphi} = Z(G)$$

for every autoprojectivity φ of G .

<u>Proof</u> : The result is trivial if G is abelian . So assume G is not abelian . Let φ be in $\mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G)$. By Proposition 2.2.5. , φ permutes the set of all Borel subgroups of G , and so we get $Z(G)^{\varphi} = Z(G)$, as $Z(G)$ is the intersection of all Borel subgroups of G ([Hu] ex. 2 page 162) . #

<u>Lemma 5.2.3.</u> Let H be the abelian 2-group $\langle y \rangle \times \langle \sigma \rangle$, where y has order 2^{α} with $\alpha \geq 1$, and σ is an involution . Then we have

$\mathrm{Frat}\,(H) = \langle y^2 \rangle$.

Proof : This follows immediately from the fact that the three maximal subgroups of H are $\langle y \rangle$, $\langle y\sigma \rangle$ and $\langle y^2 \rangle \times \langle \sigma \rangle$. ∎

We now prove a lemma of which we shall make use also in the case when G has type B_2 .

Lemma 5.2.4. Let G be one of the groups $SL_2(K)$, $Sp_4(K)$. Suppose φ is an autoprojectivity of G fixing every subgroup of G containing the centre of G . Then φ is the identity .

Proof : Let us denote by Z the centre of G . If the characteristic p of K is 2, then we have $Z = \{1\}$ and so there is nothing to prove . So let $p \neq 2$. Then Z is cyclic of order 2 . To show that $\varphi = 1$, it is enough to show that $\langle x \rangle^{\varphi} = \langle x \rangle$ for every element x of G of prime-power order . So let x be an element of G of order r^{α} , where r is a prime , and $\alpha \geq 1$. If r is odd , then $\langle x \rangle$ is the unique r–Sylow subgroup of $\langle x,Z \rangle$. Hence we must have

$$\langle x \rangle^{\varphi} = \langle x \rangle$$

as , by hypothesis $\langle x,Z \rangle^{\varphi} = \langle x,Z \rangle$, and φ is index-preserving . Now let $r = 2$. We have two cases . If $\langle x \rangle \geq Z$, then we have $\langle x \rangle^{\varphi} = \langle x \rangle$ by hypothesis . Otherwise we have $\langle x \rangle \ngeq Z$. There exists a maximal torus T of G containing x , as x is a semisimple element of G . As T is a divisible group , there exists y in T such that $y^2 = x$. We have $\langle y \rangle \ngeq Z$, as otherwise $\langle x \rangle \geq Z$ (recall that $\alpha \geq 1$) . Hence the group $\langle y,Z \rangle = \langle y \rangle \times Z$ satisfies the hypothesis of Lemma 5.2.3. , and so we get

$$\mathrm{Frat}\,(\langle y,Z \rangle) = \langle y^2 \rangle = \langle x \rangle .$$

But then we have

$$\langle x \rangle^{\varphi} = (\mathrm{Frat}\,(\langle y,Z \rangle))^{\varphi} = \mathrm{Frat}\,(\langle y,Z \rangle^{\varphi}) = \mathrm{Frat}\,(\langle y,Z \rangle) = \langle x \rangle ,$$

as the Frattini subgroup is clearly an invariant under projectivities . ∎

We can now prove the following

Proposition 5.2.5. Let φ be an autoprojectivity of $SL_2(K)$. Then there exists a unique automorphism of $SL_2(K)$ inducing φ.

Proof : Let us denote by Z the centre of $SL_2(K)$. Suppose first that the characteristic p is 2. Then we have $Z = \{1\}$, and so $SL_2(K) = PSL_2(K)$. Hence the result follows from Theorem 5.2.1.. So let us assume $p \neq 2$. By Proposition 5.2.2., we have $Z^{\varphi} = Z$, and so we can define the autoprojectivity $\bar{\varphi}$ of $PSL_2(K)$ by the rule

$$(X/Z)^{\bar{\varphi}} = X^{\varphi}/Z\,,$$

for every subgroup X of $SL_2(K)$ containing Z. By Theorem 5.2.1., there exists an automorphism $\bar{\alpha}$ of $PSL_2(K)$ inducing $\bar{\varphi}$. Also, from the structure of the group Aut $PSL_2(K)$ ([D]), there exists an automorphism α of $SL_2(K)$ inducing $\bar{\alpha}$ on $PSL_2(K)$. We therefore have

$$X^{\varphi} = X^{\alpha} \text{ for every subgroup } X \text{ of } SL_2(K) \text{ containing } Z.$$

Let us denote by ψ the autoprojectivity $\varphi(\alpha^{-1})^{*}$ of $SL_2(K)$. Then we have $X^{\psi} = X$ for every subgroup X of $SL_2(K)$ containing Z, and so, by Lemma 5.2.4., we get $\psi = 1$. Hence we obtain $\varphi = \alpha^{*}$. Uniqueness follows again from the fact that $SL_2(K)$ is a perfect group. #

We can now summarize the previous results in the following

Corollary 5.2.6. Let G be a simple algebraic group of rank 1 over K. Then every autoprojectivity of G is induced by a unique automorphism of G.

Proof : This follows from Theorem 5.2.1., Observation 5.1.1. and Proposition 5.2.5.. #

Therefore, for every simple algebraic group of rank 1 over K, we have Aut $\mathcal{L}(G) =$ Aut G (identifying the groups Aut G and $(\text{Aut } G)^{*}$). In particular we can now say that Corollary 3.4.15. of Chapter 3, holds also when the rank of G is 1 (with $\Gamma = \{1\}$ by Proposition 3.4.10.).

Remark . For simple algebraic groups of rank 1 over K we did not restrict our attention to odd primes (we did so in the case of groups of rank at least 3) .

§ 5.3 The case rank $G = 2$.

We finally consider the case when G has rank 2 . We shall show that if the characteristic p is not 2 , then we still have $\mathrm{Aut}\,\mathcal{L}(G) = \mathrm{Aut}\,G$ if G has type B_2 or G_2 . We shall deal with the case A_2 in the next chapter .

From the results we got in Chapter 3 , we only have to prove that the subgroup Γ of $\mathrm{Aut}\,\mathcal{L}(G)$ coincides with the identity subgroup of $\mathrm{Aut}\,\mathcal{L}(G)$. We recall that Γ is the subgroup of all autoprojectivities of G fixing every parabolic subgroup of G . In this paragraph we shall use the notation $\Gamma(G)$ instead of Γ to specify directly the dependence of Γ on G . We shall make use of the following result , which we prove in a more general context .

Lemma 5.3.1. Let G be a simple simply-connected algebraic group , and let T be a maximal torus of G . Suppose there exists an element n in $\mathcal{N}(T)$ such that

$s^n = s^{-1}$ for every s in T .

Then n^2 lies in the centre of G .

Proof : We first prove that n^2 lies in the centre of $\mathcal{N}(T)$. Let x be any element of $\mathcal{N}(T)$. For every s in T we have

$$s^{x^{-1}nx} = ((s^{x^{-1}})^{-1})^x = (s^{x^{-1}x})^{-1} = s^{-1} = s^n ,$$

and so $x^{-1}nxn^{-1}$ lies in $\mathcal{C}(T) = T$. Therefore we have $n^x = x^{-1}nxn^{-1}n = hn$, where we denote by h the element $x^{-1}nxn^{-1}$ of T . Then we get

$$(n^2)^x = (n^x)^2 = hnhn = nn^{-1}hnhn = nh^{-1}hn = n^2 .$$

Hence n^2 lies in the centre of $\mathcal{N}(T)$. Let us denote by Z the centre of $\mathcal{N}(T)$. We shall now prove that Z lies in $Z(G)$. Let X be the character group $\mathrm{Hom}\,(T, K^*)$ of T . We know that $Z(G)$ coincides with the subgroup $\{ s\in T \mid \alpha(s) = 1\ \forall\alpha\in\Phi \}$ of T (Chapter 1) , where Φ is the set of roots of

G relative to T. We can make W act on X by the rule $(w,x) \mapsto w(x)$, for every w in W and every x in X, where $w(x)$ is the character defined by the map $(w(x))(s) = x(s^w)$ for every s in T (Chapter 1). For every α in Φ let w_α and $\alpha^\vee$ be respectively the reflection and the coroot associated to α. It results

$$w_\alpha(x) = x - \langle x,\alpha^\vee\rangle \alpha \quad \text{for every } x \text{ in } X \text{ ([}C_2\text{] page 19)},$$

where $\langle\ ,\ \rangle : X \times Y \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ is the usual duality between X and the cocharacter group Y of T. As G is simply-connected, for every root α, the coroot $\alpha^\vee$ lies in some $\mathbb{Z}$-basis of Y, and so there exists a character x of T such that $\langle x,\alpha^\vee\rangle = -1$. Therefore we have

$$w_\alpha(x) = x - \langle x,\alpha^\vee\rangle \alpha = x + \alpha,$$

which leaves us with $\alpha = w_\alpha(x) - x$. Hence every root α is of the form

$$\alpha = w(x) - x \quad \text{for some } w \text{ in } W \text{ and } x \text{ in } X.$$

We now note that Z is contained in T, as we have

$$Z = Z(\mathcal{N}(T)) \le C_{\mathcal{N}(T)}(T) \le C_G(T) = T.$$

We can then consider the subgroup $Z^\perp = \{ x \in X \mid x(s) = 1 \ \ \forall s \in Z \}$ of X. Let w be any element of W and let x be any element of X. We prove that $w(x) - x$ lies in $Z^\perp$. So let s be in Z. We have to show that $(w(x) - x)(s) = 1$. But s in Z implies $s^w = s$, and so we get $(w(x) - x)(s) = x(s^w s^{-1}) = x(ss^{-1}) = 1$. It follows that every root α lies in $Z^\perp$ and so we obtain

$$\alpha(s) = 1 \text{ for every } \alpha \text{ in } \Phi \text{ and every } s \text{ in } Z.$$

But this means that every element s of Z lies in $Z(G)$. In particular n^2 lies in $Z(G)$. ∎

Lemma 5.3.2. Let G be an adjoint simple algebraic group whose Weyl group has a non-trivial centre. Then, for every maximal torus T of G, there exists an involution σ of G such that

$$s^\sigma = s^{-1}$$

for every s in T.

Proof : We first make an observation. Let G be any simple algebraic group, and let T be a maximal torus of G. Let $W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$ be the Weyl group and X be the character group of T. The centre of W has order 1 or 2. Suppose we are in the second case. Then the non-trivial element of $Z(W)$ is the longest element w_0 of W, and we have $w_0(x) = -x$ for every x in X, under the same action of W on X we considered before ([Bo] corollary on page 146). Therefore we get

$(w_0(x))(s) = x(s^{-1})$ for every s in T and every x in X.

But by the definition of $w_0(x)$, we have $(w_0(x))(s) = x(s^{w_0})$ and so we obtain $x(s^{w_0} s) = 1$ for every s in T and every x in X. This implies that $s^{w_0} s = 1$ for every s in T, as the identity is the unique element of T fixed by every character of T. Hence we have

$s^{w_0} = s^{-1}$ for every s in T.

We now go back to the proof of the proposition. Let G_1 be the simply-connected covering of G, and let $\pi : G_1 \rightarrow G$ be the associated isogeny. Then we have $\ker \pi = Z(G_1)$, as G is adjoint. Let T be a maximal torus of G, and let us denote by T_1 the maximal torus $\pi^{-1}(T)$ of G_1. The Weyl group $W_1 = \mathcal{N}(T_1)/T_1$ is isomorphic to the Weyl group $W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$ of G, and so its centre is non-trivial. By the previous observation, we have $s^{w_0} = s^{-1}$ for every s in T_1, where w_0 is the longest element of W_1. Let n be any representative of w_0 in $\mathcal{N}(T_1)$. Then we get $s^n = s^{-1}$ for every s in T_1, from which it follows also that n^2 lies in $Z(G_1)$ by Lemma 5.3.1.. If now we take σ to be the image of n under π, we get

$s^{\sigma} = s^{-1}$ for every s in T,

and $\sigma^2 = 1$ as $Z(G_1) = \ker \pi$. #

We start now to prove that $\Gamma(G)$ is the identity by proving the following

<u>Proposition 5.3.3.</u> Let G be an adjoint simple algebraic group of rank 2 over K. If the characteristic of K is not 2, then for every φ in $\Gamma(G)$ we have

$\langle\sigma\rangle^{\varphi} = \langle\sigma\rangle$

for every involution σ of G.

Proof : Let φ be in $\Gamma(G)$, and let σ be any involution of G . As $p \neq 2$, σ is semisimple , and so there exists a maximal torus T of G containing σ . Let $\Pi = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2\}$ be a fundamental system for the set of roots of G relative to the choice of T . With the notation we introduced in § 4.3 , we have

$$T = T_{\alpha_1} \times T_{\alpha_2} .$$

We recall that T_{α_i} is a one-dimensional subtorus of T for every $i = 1, 2$. Therefore , being isomorphic to K^* , T_{α_i} has a unique involution τ_i for every $i = 1, 2$. By Proposition 4.3.12. , φ fixes both T_{α_1} and T_{α_2} , and so we must also have $<\tau_1>^\varphi = <\tau_1>$ and $<\tau_2>^\varphi = <\tau_2>$ as φ is index-preserving . Then we get $<\tau_1,\tau_2>^\varphi = <\tau_1,\tau_2>$, from which it follows $<\tau_1\tau_2>^\varphi = <\tau_1\tau_2>$. But then we conclude by observing that σ must coincide with τ_1 or τ_2 or $\tau_1\tau_2$. #

Proposition 5.3.4. Let G be an adjoint simple algebraic group of type B_2 or G_2 over the field K of characteristic not 2 . Let φ be in $\Gamma(G)$. Then we have

$$<s>^\varphi = <s>$$

for every semisimple element s of G .

Proof : Let s be a semisimple element of G , and let T be a maximal torus of G containing s . As G has type B_2 or G_2 , the centre of the Weyl group of G is non-trivial . Therefore , by Lemma 5.3.2. , there exists an involution σ in G such that $t^\sigma = t^{-1}$ for every t in T . In particular we have $s^\sigma = s^{-1}$. We consider the dihedral group $<s,\sigma>$. Being generated by involutions , this group is therefore fixed by φ , by Proposition 5.3.3. . If now s has order 2 , then we conclude by Proposition 5.3.3. . Otherwise $<s>$ is the unique maximal cyclic subgroup of $<s,\sigma>$, and therefore it must be fixed by φ , as φ fixes $<s,\sigma>$. #

For the behaviour of unipotent subgroups under the action of $\Gamma(G)$, we can use the result we proved in Chapter 4 concerning the classification of unipotent conjugacy classes . We therefore have the following

Proposition 5.3.5. Let G be an adjoint simple algebraic group of type B_2 or G_2 over the field K of characteristic not 2. Let φ be in $\Gamma(G)$. Then we have

$$\langle u\rangle^{\varphi} = \langle u\rangle$$

for every unipotent element u of G.

Proof : We can use the same proof of Proposition 4.6.4.. #

We are now able to state

Theorem 5.3.6. Let G be an adjoint simple algebraic group of type B_2 or G_2 over the field K of characteristic not 2. Then every autoprojectivity of G is induced by a unique automorphism of G.

Proof : We know that this is equivalent to prove that $\Gamma(G) = \{1\}$. This then follows from Proposition 5.3.4. and 5.3.5.. #

Let us now consider the simply-connected case. As we already observe that the simply-connected simple algebraic group of type G_2 is also adjoint, we only have to deal with the simply-connected group of type B_2, i.e. with the symplectic group $Sp_4(K)$.

Proposition 5.3.7. Let G be the group $Sp_4(K)$ over the field K of characteristic not 2. Then every autoprojectivity of G is induced by a unique automorphism of G.

Proof : It is enough to show that $\Gamma(G) = \{1\}$. So let φ be in $\Gamma(G)$. We consider the isogeny $\pi : G \longrightarrow G_{ad}$. Then π induces an abstract isomorphism μ between $G/Z(G)$ and G_{ad} (see also Observation 5.1.1.). We also recall that π induces a bijection between the set of parabolic subgroups of G and the set of parabolic subgroups of G_{ad} (Corollary 21.3C and Proposition B on page 148 in [Hu]). By Proposition 5.2.2., we have $Z(G)^{\varphi} = Z(G)$, and so we can define the autoprojectivity ϕ of $G/Z(G)$ by the rule

$$(X/Z(G))^{\phi} = X^{\varphi}/Z(G),$$

for every subgroup X of G containing $Z(G)$. If we denote by γ the projectivity of $G/Z(G)$ onto G_{ad} induced by the isomorphism μ, then we can define the autoprojectivity ψ of G_{ad} by the map $\psi = \gamma^{-1}\phi\gamma$. From the fact that φ lies in $\Gamma(G)$, it follows that ψ lies in $\Gamma(G_{ad})$. But then we must have $\psi = 1$, by Theorem 5.3.6., and so we are left with $\phi = 1$. Hence we get

$$(X/Z(G))^{\phi} = X/Z(G) ,$$

for every subgroup X of G containing $Z(G)$, and so we have $X^{\varphi} = X$ for every subgroup X of G containing $Z(G)$. But then we must have $\varphi = 1$, by Lemma 5.2.4.. #

We can now summarize the previous results in the following

<u>Corollary 5.3.8.</u> Let G be a simple algebraic group of type B_2 or G_2 over the field K of characteristic not 2. Then every autoprojectivity of G is induced by a unique automorphism of G.

<u>Proof</u> : This follows from Theorem 5.3.6. , Observation 5.1.1. and Proposition 5.3.7.. #

In the next chapter we shall deal with the case left out in the discussion so far developed, i.e. the case when G has type A_2.

Chapter 6 The case when G has type A_2.

In the previous chapters we proved that if G is a simple algebraic group over K, where K has odd characteristic, then every autoprojectivity of G is induced by a unique automorphism of G if G is not of type A_2. In this chapter we shall prove that the case when G has type A_2 is indeed an exceptional one. In fact we shall show that for the group $G = SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$, the corresponding group Γ of exceptional autoprojectivities of G is non-trivial. Therefore every non-trivial element of Γ will be an autoprojectivity of G not induced by any automorphism of G.

We shall make use of a result obtained by H. Völklein for the finite groups $SL_3(q)$ in [V_1]. Unfortunately we found a mistake in the proof of this result, and in fact we could exhibit a counterexample showing that Proposition 3 and the following corollary in [V_1] are not correct. Nevertheless we were able, by modifying the assumptions, to show that the thesis stated in the above mentioned proposition is still valid ([Cs_3]). In the next paragraph we shall construct the above mentioned counterexample.

§ 6.1 The group $SL_3(27)$ is strongly lattice determined.

First we give some notation that we shall use in this and in the next paragraph. By G we shall denote the group $SL_3(q)$ unless otherwise specified, where q is a power of a prime p. We shall denote by U the group of upper unitriangular matrices of G, and by T the group of diagonal matrices of G. We also define the following three subgroups of U by

$$U_1 = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & k & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mid k \in F_q \right\}, \qquad U_2 = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mid k \in F_q \right\}$$

$$U_3 = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & k \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mid k \in F_q \right\}$$

U_1, U_2 and U_3 are the usual root-subgroups of G.

We recall Proposition 3 and the following corollary in $[V_1]$.

<u>Proposition 3</u>. Let G be one of the groups $SL_3(q)$, $SU_3(q)$, and let λ be an autoprojectivity of the group T of diagonal matrices of G. Then λ can be extended to an autoprojectivity of G fixing every p-subgroup of G and commuting with the inner automorphisms of G, if the following holds :

(i). λ commutes with the action of $\mathcal{N}(T)/T$;

(ii). λ fixes every subgroup of T which is fixed by a non-trivial element of $\mathcal{N}(T)/T$;

(iii). λ fixes every 2-subgroup and every 3-subgroup of T;

(iv). λ fixes every subgroup of T which does not act irreducibly on each of the groups U_i for $i = 1,2,3$.

<u>Corollary.</u> The group Γ of exceptional autoprojectivities of $SL_3(p^f)$ is not trivial if there exists a prime $\ell \geq 11$ such that $p^f \equiv 1 \mod \ell$, $p^f \not\equiv 1 \mod \ell^2$ and $p^s \not\equiv 1 \mod \ell$ for every s such that $0 < s < f$.

We shall show that the group $SL_3(27)$ is strongly lattice determined, so that the corollary is not correct as one can see by taking $p = 3$, $f = 3$ and the prime ℓ to be equal 13. Also we shall construct a family of non-trivial autoprojectivities of T satisfying the hypothesis of Proposition 3, but which of course cannot be extended to autoprojectivities of the whole G fixing every 3-subgroup of G (and commuting with the inner automorphisms of G).

So let $G = SL_3(27)$. G is a simple group, and so we already know that to show that G is strongly lattice determined, it is enough to show that every autoprojectivity of G is induced by an automorphism (Chapter 1). We define Γ to be the group of all autoprojectivities of G fixing every 3-Sylow subgroup of G. This matches the definition we gave in Chapter 3. Identifying

Aut G with the subgroup of autoprojectivities of G induced by automorphisms , we have , by Proposition 2 in [V_1] ,

$$\mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G) = \Gamma \rtimes \mathrm{Aut}\, G \ .$$

To show that G is strongly lattice determined , it will be enough to prove that Γ is the identity subgroup of Aut $\mathcal{L}(G)$.

From the corollary on page 11 of [V_2] , to prove that $\Gamma = \{1\}$ we only need to show that $X^\varphi = X$ for every subgroup X of T and every φ in Γ . In our case T is isomorphic to $C_{26} \times C_{26}$, and so , by Lemma 1 in [V_2] , it is enough to show that every φ in Γ fixes every subgroup of order 13 of T . Let $\mathcal{M}$ be the set of the 14 subgroups of order 13 of T . If we make the Weyl group $W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$ act naturally on $\mathcal{M}$, we get four orbits , of which two have three elements , one has two elements and one has six elements. Let us call this last orbit $\mathcal{E}$. We now fix an element φ of Γ . As we showed in [Cs_2] , φ fixes every subgroup of T which lies in the orbits with two or three elements . To prove that the same holds for the elements of $\mathcal{E}$, we need a description of these subgroups . Let u be a fixed element of order 13 in $F_{27}^{\times}$, let e be the element $\mathrm{diag}(u, u^{10}, u^2)$ of T , and $E = \langle e \rangle$. Then E lies in $\mathcal{E}$ and for every E' in $\mathcal{E}$ there exists a unique w in W such that $E' = E^w$. Let now P be the following subgroup of the group of upper-unitriangular matrices

$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & k & k^3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \ \middle| \ k \in F_{27} \right\}$$

From a direct calculation , it follows that E is contained in $\mathcal{N}(P)$, and even that E is the unique subgroup in $\mathcal{E}$ satisfying this condition . Also, we observe that E^φ lies in $\mathcal{E}$, as φ is index preserving and we already know that it fixes all the subgroups of order 13 of T not in $\mathcal{E}$. Now P is the unique 3-Sylow subgroup of the group EP , thus P^φ is the unique 3-Sylow subgroup of $\langle E^\varphi , P^\varphi \rangle$. Hence we get

$E^{\varphi} \le \mathcal{N}(P^{\varphi})$.

Finally, as by Proposition 1 in $[V_2]$ P is fixed by φ, we are left with $E^{\varphi} \le \mathcal{N}(P)$, which gives $E^{\varphi} = E$, since E is the unique subgroup in $\mathcal{E}$ contained in $\mathcal{N}(P)$. If now E' is any element of $\mathcal{E}$, we just need to take any g in $\mathcal{N}(T)$ such that $E' = E^g$, and apply the previous argument to the groups E' and P^g. Thus Γ is the identity group, and G is strongly lattice determined.

Now we shall construct for every w in W an autoprojectivity φ_w of T satisfying the conditions of Proposition 3 in $[V_1]$. So let w be a fixed element of W. We define φ_w to be the identity on the 2-subgroups of T and on the subgroups of order 13 which lie in orbits of length two or three of $\mathcal{M}$. If E' is any element in $\mathcal{E}$, there exists a unique ρ in W such that $E' = E^{\rho}$. We then put

$E'^{\varphi_w} = E^{w\rho}$.

There exists a unique way to extend φ_w to an autoprojectivity of T. From a direct calculation it is possible to show that, for every w in W, φ_w satisfies the conditions (i).-(iii). of Proposition 3 (and also that for every φ in Aut $L(T)$ satisfying (i).-(iii). of Proposition 3 there exists a unique w in W such that $\varphi = \varphi_w$). From the fact that 13 does not divide 3^r-1 for $r = 1$ or 2, it follows that φ_w satisfies also condition (iv).. Therefore we can say that for every non trivial w in W we have a non trivial autoprojectivity φ_w of T which satisfies the hypothesis of Proposition 3, but which does not fit with the thesis, because we already know that $\Gamma = \{1\}$. Besides, by taking the prime ℓ equal 13, we see that G represents a counterexample also for the corollary following Proposition 3 in $[V_1]$.

The point is that if λ satisfies the hypothesis of Proposition 3, X is a subgroup of T not fixed by λ and P is a p-subgroup of $SL(3,p^n)$ such that $X \le \mathcal{N}(P)$, then condition (iv). is not enough to guarantee that $X^{\lambda} \le \mathcal{N}(P)$ (step 3 in the proof of Proposition 3). In the following paragraph we are going to modify the content of condition (iv)..

§ 6.2 A procedure for extending autoprojectivities of the group of diagonal matrices of $SL_3(q)$ to the whole of $\mathcal{L}(SL_3(q))$.

We keep the same notation we introduced in the previous paragraph, so that G will always denote the group $SL_3(q)$. Also, just for this paragraph we shall denote by K the field F_q. If F is a subfield of K, we denote by $T(F)$ the subgroup of T whose elements have entries in F.

Let $s = \mathrm{diag}(\lambda, \mu, \nu)$ be an element of T. Then we put :

$$\alpha_1(s) = \lambda\mu^{-1} , \quad \alpha_2(s) = \mu\nu^{-1} , \quad \alpha_3(s) = \lambda\nu^{-1} \ (= \alpha_1(s)\alpha_2(s)) .$$

We shall just write α_i for $\alpha_i(s)$ when there is no ambiguity. Also, for $i = 1, 2, 3$, we denote by $\mu_i(s)$ the minimum polynimial of $\alpha_i(s)$ over F_p. Again we will just write μ_i for $\mu_i(s)$ when there is no ambiguity.

<u>Definition 6.2.1.</u> We say that an element s in T satisfies $(*)$ if

(i). $|s| = |\alpha_i(s)|$ for every $i = 1, 2, 3$; (which implies that $\deg \mu_i = \deg \mu_j$ for every $i, j = 1, 2, 3$) ;

(ii). $\mu_i \neq \mu_j$ for every $i \neq j$.

We say that an element s in T satisfies $(**)$ if nsn^{-1} satisfies $(*)$ for every n in $\mathcal{N}(T)$. #

Suppose that s is an element of T satisfying $(*)$. Then we have

$F_p(\alpha_1) = F_p(\alpha_2) = F_p(\alpha_3) = F_{p^n}$,

where n is the degree of the μ_i's. We shall denote this subfield of K by $F(s)$, and simply by F if there is no ambiguity.

We shall aim to show that for any p-subgroup P of G, and every element s of T satisfying (**) we have $T(F(s)) \leq \mathcal{N}(P)$. The next few propositions will be devoted to a proof of this fact .

<u>Proposition 6.2.2.</u> Let s be an element of T satisfying (*) . Then the map

$$\Psi : F_p[X] \to F \times F \times F$$

given by

$$\theta \mapsto (\theta(\alpha_1), \theta(\alpha_2), \theta(\alpha_3))$$

is a surjective F_p– algebra homomorphism .

<u>Proof</u> : It is clear that Ψ is an F_p– algebra homomorphism . To show that Ψ is surjective we observe that condition (*) implies that $\ker \Psi = (\mu_1 \mu_2 \mu_3)$. Hence we have an induced F_p– algebra monomorphism

$$\bar{\Psi} : F_p[X] / (\mu_1 \mu_2 \mu_3) \to F \times F \times F .$$

But now $F_p[X] / (\mu_1\mu_2\mu_3)$ and $F \times F \times F$ are both F_p–spaces of dimension $3n$, where n is $\deg \mu_i$. Hence $\bar{\Psi}$ is an isomorphism , and Ψ is surjective .#

We now consider the three monomorphisms $x_i : K \to U$ defined by

$$x_1(k) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & k & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \qquad x_2(k) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & k \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \qquad x_3(k) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -k \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

for every k in K .

We therefore have the commutator formula

$$x_2(b)x_1(a) = x_1(a)x_2(b)x_3(ab) \qquad \text{for every } a, b \text{ in } K .$$

Also , from the fact that $\mathrm{Im}\, x_i$, for $i = 1, 2, 3$, are exactly the three root–subgroups of G relative to T contained in U , for every u in U there exists a unique 3–tuple (a, b, c) with a, b, c in K such that

$$u = x_1(a)x_2(b)x_3(c) .$$

In the following we fix an element u in U and hence three elements a, b, c of K such that $u = x_1(a)x_2(b)x_3(c)$.

Proposition 6.2.3. For every n in $\mathbb{Z}$ there exists $h(n)$ in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$u^n = x_1(na)x_2(nb)x_3(nc+h(n)ab) .$$

Proof : We can take $h(n) = 0$ if $n = 0, 1$; $h(n) = n(n+1)/2$ if $n \geq 2$ and $h(n) = (-n+1)(-n+2)/2$ if $n < 0$. The result then comes by induction . $\blacksquare$

We now fix s in T such that s satisfies $(*)$.

Proposition 6.2.4. Let θ be an element of $\mathbb{F}_p[X]$. Then there exists γ in F such that

$$x_1(\theta(\alpha_1)a)x_2(\theta(\alpha_2)b)x_3(\theta(\alpha_3)c+\gamma ab)$$

lies in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$.

Proof : We use induction on $\deg\theta$. Suppose $\deg\theta = 0$, then $\theta = k$ lies in $\mathbb{F}_p$. Choose n in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that $n \mapsto k$ under the natural map $\pi : \mathbb{Z} \to K$ given by $m \mapsto m.1_K$ for every m in $\mathbb{Z}$. Then , from Proposition 6.2.3. , there exists $h(n)$ in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$u^n = x_1(na)x_2(nb)x_3(nc+h(n)ab) .$$

But then $x_1(ka)x_2(kb)x_3(kc+(h(n).1_K)ab) = u^n$ lies in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$, $k = \theta(\alpha_i)$ for every

$i = 1, 2, 3$ and $h(n).1_K$ is in F . So now assume the result for all θ in $\mathbb{F}_p$ such that $\deg\theta \leq r$ and let θ be of degree $r+1$. Then we have

$$\theta = \theta' + k_{r+1}X^{r+1} ,$$

where θ' has degree $\leq r$, and k_{r+1} is in $\mathbb{F}_p$. Then , by induction , there exists γ' in F such that

$$v = x_1(\theta'(\alpha_1)a)x_2(\theta'(\alpha_2)b)x_3(\theta'(\alpha_3)c+\gamma' ab)$$

lies in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$. Choose n_{r+1} in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that $\pi(n_{r+1}) = k_{r+1}$, and let

$$w = (s^{r+1}us^{-(r+1)})^{n_{r+1}} .$$

Then w lies in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$. Also we have

$$w = x_1(n_{r+1}\alpha_1^{r+1}a)x_2(n_{r+1}\alpha_2^{r+1}b)x_3(n_{r+1}\alpha_3^{r+1}c+h(n_{r+1})\alpha_3^{r+1}ab)$$

as $\alpha_3 = \alpha_1\alpha_2$.

Let $\gamma'' = h(n_{r+1})\alpha_3^{r+1}$, so that γ'' is in F . Consider now the element vw, which is in $\langle u \rangle^{\langle \Phi \rangle}$. Using the commutator formula , we have

$$vw = x_1((\theta'(\alpha_1)+n_{r+1}x_1^{r+1})a)x_2((\theta'(\alpha_2)+n_{r+1}\alpha_2^{r+1})b).$$
$$.x_3((\theta'(\alpha_3)+n_{r+1}\alpha_3^{r+1})c+(\gamma'+\gamma''+n_{r+1}\alpha_1^{r+1}\theta'(\alpha_2))ab) ,$$

which gives the result we want , by defining

$$\gamma = \gamma' + \gamma'' + n_{r+1}\alpha_1^{r+1}\theta'(\alpha_2)$$

and noting that

$$\theta'(\alpha_i) + n_{r+1}\alpha_i^{r+1} = \theta(\alpha_i)$$

for every $i = 1, 2, 3$. #

Proposition 6.2.5. For every A , B , C in F there exists k in F such that

$$x_1(Aa)x_2(Bb)x_3(Cc+kab)$$

lies in $\langle u \rangle^{\langle \Phi \rangle}$.

Proof : By Proposition 6.2.2. , there exists θ in $F_p[X]$ such that

$$\theta(\alpha_1) = A , \theta(\alpha_2) = B \text{ and } \theta(\alpha_3) = C .$$

Then , by Proposition 6.2.4. , there exists γ in F such that

$$x_1(\theta(\alpha_1)a)x_2(\theta(\alpha_2)b)x_3(\theta(\alpha_3)c+\gamma ab)$$

lies in $\langle u \rangle^{\langle \Phi \rangle}$. So we just need to take $k = \gamma$ to get the result . #

Proposition 6.2.6. Let D be in F . Then

$$x_3(Dab)$$

lies in $\langle u \rangle^{\langle \Phi \rangle}$.

Proof : Suppose we have ξ_1 , ξ_2 , ζ , ζ' in K and let

$$y = x_1(\xi_1)x_2(\xi_2)x_3(\zeta) \quad , \quad y' = x_1(\xi_1)x_2(\xi_2)x_3(\zeta') \ .$$

Then we have

$$yy'^{-1} = x_1(\xi_1)x_2(\xi_2)x_3(\zeta)\, x_3(-\zeta')x_2(-\xi_2)x_1(-\xi_1) = x_3(\zeta-\zeta')$$

as $\operatorname{Im} \chi_3 = Z(U)$.

We apply this to the following situation .

Let A , A' , B , B' be elements of F . From Proposition 6.2.5. there exist k , k' in F such that

$$v = x_1(Aa)x_2(Bb)x_3(kab) \qquad \text{and} \qquad w = x_1(A'a)x_2(B'b)x_3(k'ab)$$

are both in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$. Then vw and wv are both in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$, and we have

$$vw = x_1((A+A')a)x_2((B+B')b)x_3((k+k'+A'B)ab) \ ,$$

$$wv = x_1((A+A')a)x_2((B+B')b)x_3((k+k'+AB')ab) \ .$$

Hence $x_3((A'B-AB')ab) = (vw)(wv)^{-1}$ lies in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$.

Finally, if we let $A' = D$, $B = 1$, $A = B' = 0$, then we obtain that $x_3(Dab)$ lies in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$, as we wanted. ∎

Proposition 6.2.7. Let A, B, C, D be elements of F. Then

$$x_1(Aa)x_2(Bb)x_3(Cc+Dab)$$

lies in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$.

Proof : From Proposition 6.2.5., there exists k in F such that

$$v = x_1(Aa)x_2(Bb)x_3(Cc+kab)$$

lies in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$. Then take $k' = D - k$ and apply Proposition 6.2.6. to obtain that

$w = x_3(k'ab)$ is in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$. Hence

$$x_1(Aa)x_2(Bb)x_3(Cc+Dab) = vw$$

lies in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$. ∎

We are now able to state the result that we shall use in the final step.

Lemma 6.2.8. Let s be an element of T satisfying $(*)$. If P is a subgroup of U such that s lies in $\mathcal{N}(P)$, then $T(F(s))$ is contained in $\mathcal{N}(P)$.

Proof : Let t be in $T(F(s))$, i.e. $t = \mathrm{diag}(\lambda', \mu', \nu')$, with λ', μ', ν' in $F(s)$. Then, if $u = x_1(a)x_2(b)x_3(c)$ lies in P, we have

$$tut^{-1} = x_1(\lambda'\mu'^{-1}a)x_2(\mu'\nu'^{-1}b)x_3(\lambda'\nu'^{-1}c) \ ,$$

which is in $\langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle}$ by Proposition 6.2.7.. Hence, for every u in P and every t in $T(F(s))$, we have

$$tut^{-1} \in \langle u\rangle^{\langle s\rangle} \leq P^{\langle s\rangle} = P \ .$$

So for every t in $T(F(s))$ we have $P^t \leq P$, which implies that $T(F(s))$ is contained in $\mathcal{N}(P)$. ∎

We are now in the position to prove the following statement, which represents the announced modification of Proposition 3 in $[V_1]$

Proposition 6.2.9. Let G be one of the groups $SL_3(q)$, $SU_3(q)$ where q is a power of a prime p. Let λ be an autoprojectivity of the group T of diagonal matrices of G. Then λ can be extended to an autoprojectivity of G fixing every p-subgroup of G and commuting with the inner automorphisms of G, if the following holds

(i). λ commutes with the action of $\mathcal{N}(T)/T$;

(ii). λ fixes every subgroup of T which is fixed by a non-trivial element of $\mathcal{N}(T)/T$;

(iii). λ fixes every 2-subgroup and every 3-subgroup of T;

(iv'). if s is a prime power order element of T not satisfying $(**)$, then λ fixes the subgroup generated by s.

Proof : We shall prove that if P is a p-subgroup of G normalized by a subgroup X of T, then also X^{λ} and $X^{\lambda^{-1}}$ normalize P. It is then possible to follow the proof of Proposition 3 in $[V_1]$ from step (5) to get the result. So let X be a subgroup of T and P be a p-subgroup of G normalized by X. If X is fixed by λ, then there is nothing to prove. So assume that λ does not fix X. Without loss of generality we may assume that X is cyclic of prime power order. By condition (iv')., there exists a generator s of X satisfying $(**)$. We can apply the same argument of step (4) in the proof of Proposition 3 in $[V_1]$, to obtain an element n in $\mathcal{N}(T)$ such that nPn^{-1} is contained in U. Now nsn^{-1} satisfies $(*)$, and so we can apply the Lemma 6.2.8. to get

$$T(F(nsn^{-1})) \leq \mathcal{N}(nPn^{-1}).$$

Then we have that $nX^{\lambda}n^{-1}$ and $nX^{\lambda^{-1}}n^{-1}$ are both contained in $n\mathcal{N}(P)n^{-1}$, as $T(F(nsn^{-1}))$ contains every subgroup of order $|s|$ of T, and λ is index-preserving. Hence we have that both X^{λ} and $X^{\lambda^{-1}}$ are contained in $\mathcal{N}(P)$, and we are done. ∎

Our aim will be to extend certain autoprojectivities of the subgroup of diagonal matrices of the group $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$ to the whole of $\mathcal{L}(SL_3(\bar{F}_{23}))$. In the next paragraph we begin by considering more closely the group of autoprojectivities of 2-dimensional tori .

§ 6.3 Autoprojectivities of 2-dimensional tori

We are interested in the group of autoprojectivities of 2-dimensional tori . The reason for this is that in the next paragraph we shall extend certain autoprojectivities of the group of diagonal matrices (which is a 2-dimensional torus) of $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$ to the whole of $\mathcal{L}(SL_3(\bar{F}_{23}))$.

So let T be a 2-dimensional torus . Then T is isomorphic to the direct product of 2 copies of $K^\times$. From § 4.2 we have

$T_r \cong C_{r^\infty} \times C_{r^\infty}$ if r is a prime , $r \neq p$, and

$T_p = \{1\}$.

We also recall from Proposition 4.2.1. that every autoprojectivity of T is index-preserving . Hence , for every φ in $\mathrm{Aut}\,\mathcal{L}(T)$ and every prime r , we shall have

$T_r^{\varphi} = T_r$.

As the group of autoprojectivities of the group $\mathrm{Dr}\,(C_{r^\infty} \times C_{r^\infty})$ (r prime , $r \neq p$) is the cartesian product of the groups $\mathrm{Aut}\,\mathcal{L}(C_{r^\infty} \times C_{r^\infty})$ (r prime , $r \neq p$) , we are therefore left with the problem to study the group of autoprojectivities of the group $C_{r^\infty} \times C_{r^\infty}$ where r is a prime .

For this purpose we introduce the concept of the meet-semilattice of a group .

<u>Definition 6.3.1.</u> For every group H , we define $\mathcal{SL}(H)$ to be the set of all cyclic subgroups of H . #

$\mathcal{SL}(H)$ is a subset of the lattice $\mathcal{L}(H)$ with the property that for every A , B in $SL(\mathrm{H})$, then $A \wedge B$ lies in $SL(\mathrm{H})$. Such a set is called a meet-semilattice (for a more general definition see [Bi] page 22). A bijection φ of $SL(\mathrm{H})$ onto itself will be called an *automorphism* of $SL(\mathrm{H})$ if the following holds

$A \leq B$ if and only if $A^{\varphi} \leq B^{\varphi}$ for every A, B in $SL(\mathrm{H})$.

If φ is an autoprojectivity of H, then clearly the restriction of φ to $SL(\mathrm{H})$ is an automorphism of $SL(\mathrm{H})$. We are interested in the converse, i.e. we would like to know whether an automorphism of $SL(\mathrm{H})$ can be extended (uniquely) to an autoprojectivity of H. This is not in general true, as one can see from the following example. Let H be the group $C_r \times C_r \times C_r$. Then every permutation of $SL(\mathrm{H})$ fixing the identity subgroup is an automorphism of $SL(\mathrm{H})$, but clearly the automorphism φ interchanging the cyclic subgroups $C_r \times \{1\} \times \{1\}$ and $\{1\} \times \{1\} \times C_r$, and fixing all the other elements of $SL(\mathrm{H})$ cannot be extended to an autoprojectivity of H. However we shall show that for the groups $C_{r^\infty} \times C_{r^\infty}$ every automorphism of $SL(C_{r^\infty} \times C_{r^\infty})$ can be extended (uniquely) to an autoprojectivity of $C_{r^\infty} \times C_{r^\infty}$.

So let r be a fixed prime. We denote by R the group $C_{r^\infty} \times C_{r^\infty}$.

<u>Observation 6.3.2.</u> Every finite subgroup M of R is of the form $M = A \times B$, where A, B are in $SL(\mathrm{R})$, $A \cong C_{r^\alpha}$, $B \cong C_{r^\beta}$ and $\alpha \geq \beta$. Also, for every α in $\mathbb{N}$, there exists a unique subgroup R_α of R isomorphic to $C_{r^\alpha} \times C_{r^\alpha}$ (namely $R_\alpha = \Omega_\alpha(R) = \{ x \in R \mid x^{r^\alpha} = 1 \}$). ∎

In the following φ will always denote an automorphism of $SL(\mathrm{R})$. Note that φ is index-preserving.

<u>Proposition 6.3.3.</u> Let C, D be in $SL(\mathrm{R})$. Then we have

$(C \wedge D)^{\varphi} = C^{\varphi} \wedge D^{\varphi}$.

<u>Proof</u>: From $C \wedge D \leq C, D$ we get $(C \wedge D)^{\varphi} \leq C^{\varphi}, D^{\varphi}$ and so $(C \wedge D)^{\varphi} \leq C^{\varphi} \wedge D^{\varphi}$. Similarly we have $(C^{\varphi} \wedge D^{\varphi})^{\varphi^{-1}} \leq C^{\varphi\varphi^{-1}} \wedge D^{\varphi\varphi^{-1}} = C \wedge D$,

which gives $(C \wedge D)^{\varphi} \geq C^{\varphi} \wedge D^{\varphi}$. Hence we get $(C \wedge D)^{\varphi} = C^{\varphi} \wedge D^{\varphi}$.

∎

From Proposition 6.3.3., it follows that if A, B are in $SL(R)$ and $A \wedge B = \{1\}$, then we also have $A^{\varphi} \wedge B^{\varphi} = \{1\}$. If $M = A \times B$ is a subgroup of R with A, B in $SL(R)$, we wish to define $M^{\varphi} = A^{\varphi} \times B^{\varphi}$. We have to show that this definition is independent of the particular choice of A and B.

<u>Proposition 6.3.4.</u> Let A, B be elements of $SL(R)$, $A \cong B \cong C_{r^\alpha}$ and $A \wedge B = \{1\}$. Then we have $A \times B = A^{\varphi} \times B^{\varphi} = R_{\alpha}$.

<u>Proof</u> : From the hypothesis and Proposition 6.3.3., we have

$$AB = A \times B \cong C_{r^\alpha} \times C_{r^\alpha} \cong A^{\varphi} \times B^{\varphi}.$$

Hence $A \times B = A^{\varphi} \times B^{\varphi} = R_{\alpha}$ from the above Observation 6.3.2.. ∎

<u>Proposition 6.3.5.</u> Let A, B, C be elements of $SL(R)$ such that $A \cong C \cong C_{r^\alpha}$, $B \cong C_{r^\beta}$, $A \wedge B = \{1\}$ and $\alpha > \beta$. Then if $AC = A \times B$, we have

$$C^{\varphi} \leq A^{\varphi} \times B^{\varphi}.$$

<u>Proof</u> : From Proposition 6.3.3., we have $|A^{\varphi} \wedge C^{\varphi}| = |A \wedge C|$, and so

$$|A^{\varphi}C^{\varphi}| = |AC| = r^{\alpha+\beta}.$$

But then we must have $A^{\varphi}C^{\varphi} \cong C_{r^\alpha} \times C_{r^\beta}$, as $A^{\varphi}C^{\varphi}$ is contained in R_{α}, and so $A^{\varphi}C^{\varphi}$ contains R_{β}. Thus we get $B^{\varphi} \leq A^{\varphi}C^{\varphi}$ as $B^{\varphi} \leq R_{\beta}$. Therefore we have $A^{\varphi} \times B^{\varphi} \leq A^{\varphi}C^{\varphi}$, and we must have equality as they both have order $r^{\alpha+\beta}$. Hence $C^{\varphi} \leq A^{\varphi} \times B^{\varphi}$. ∎

<u>Proposition 6.3.6.</u> Let A, B, C be elements of $SL(R)$ such that $A \cong C_{r^\alpha}$, $B \cong C_{r^\beta}$, $A \wedge B = \{1\}$ and $\alpha \geq \beta$. Then if $C \leq A \times B$, we have

$$C^{\varphi} \leq A^{\varphi} \times B^{\varphi}.$$

<u>Proof</u> : If $\alpha = \beta$, we have $A \times B = R_{\alpha}$ and so from $C \leq R_{\alpha}$ we get

$$C^{\varphi} \leq R_{\alpha} = A^{\varphi} \times B^{\varphi}$$

by Proposition 6.3.4., and we are done. Now let

$X = \{(\alpha, \beta) \in \mathbb{N}_0 \times \mathbb{N}_0 \mid 0 \leq \beta < \alpha,\ \exists\ A, B, C$ in $SL(R)$ such that

$A \cong C_r\alpha$, $B \cong C_r\beta$, $A \wedge B = \{1\}$, $C \leq A \times B$ and $C^\varphi \nleq A^\varphi \times B^\varphi\}$.
We want to show that X is empty . Suppose this is false and take $(\bar\alpha, \bar\beta)$ in X such that

$$(\alpha, \beta) \in X \Rightarrow \alpha \geq \bar\alpha \qquad \text{and} \qquad (\bar\alpha, \beta) \in X \Rightarrow \beta \geq \bar\beta .$$

Choose A , B , C in Γ such that $A \cong C_r\bar\alpha$, $B \cong C_r\bar\beta$, $A \wedge B = \{1\}$, $C \leq A \times B$ and $C^\varphi \nleq A^\varphi \times B^\varphi$. We shall find a final contradiction in a few steps :

(i). We must have $\bar\beta \geq 1$. For if $\bar\beta = 0$, then $B = \{1\}$ and so $C \leq A$ gives $C^\varphi \nleq A^\varphi$ which is a contradiction . Note that this also implies that $\bar\alpha \geq 2$.

(ii). We have $|C| = |A|$. Otherwise we would have $C \leq A^r \times B$. But then either $\bar\alpha = \bar\beta + 1$ and so $A^r \times B = R_{\bar\beta}$, which gives $C^\varphi \leq R_{\bar\beta} = (A^r)^\varphi \times B^\varphi \leq A^\varphi \times B^\varphi$, or $\bar\alpha > \bar\beta + 1$ and so we must have $C^\varphi \leq (A^r)^\varphi \times B^\varphi$ by minimality of $\bar\alpha$. But then we get $C^\varphi \leq A^\varphi \times B^\varphi$. In both cases we have a contradiction .

(iii). We have $AC = A \times B$. Suppose this is not the case , i.e. $AC < A \times B$. We can choose generators a , b , c for A , B , C resp. such that $c = ab^{r^\gamma}$ where $0 \leq \gamma \leq \bar\beta - 1$. So we get $|A \wedge C| = r^{\bar\alpha - \bar\beta + \gamma}$. But then , $AC < A \times B$ implies $\gamma \neq 0$, hence we have $C \leq A \times B^r$. Also , as $\bar\beta \geq 1$, we must have $C^\varphi \leq A^\varphi \times (B^r)^\varphi$, otherwise $(\bar\alpha, \bar\beta - 1)$ lies in X , which contradicts minimality of $\bar\beta$. Thus we obtain $C^\varphi \leq A^\varphi \times B^\varphi$, which gives a contradiction.

(iv). At this point we can apply Proposition 6.3.5. to get $C^\varphi \leq A^\varphi \times B^\varphi$, which gives the final contradiction. Hence X is empty and the result is proved. #

<u>Lemma 6.3.7.</u> Let A , A' , B , B' be elements of $SL(\mathrm{R})$ such that $A \cong A' \cong C_r\alpha$, $B \cong B' \cong C_r\beta$, $A \wedge B = A' \wedge B' = \{1\}$. Then we have

$A \times B = A' \times B'$ if and only if $A^\varphi \times B^\varphi = A'^\varphi \times B'^\varphi$.

<u>Proof</u> : Without loss of generality we may assume $\alpha \geq \beta$. Then the result follows from Proposition 6.3.6. applied to φ and φ^{-1} . #

We can now extend the definition of φ to all finite subgroups of R .

Let M be a finite subgroup of R. Then we have $M = A \times B$ for some A and B in $SL(R)$ such that $A \cong C_{p^\alpha}$, $B \cong C_{p^\beta}$ and $\alpha \geq \beta$. We define M^ϕ to be $A^\varphi \times B^\varphi$. Lemma 6.3.7. guarantees that this is a good definition.

<u>Proposition 6.3.8.</u> ϕ is inclusion preserving.

<u>Proof</u>: Let M, N be finite subgroups of R such that $M \leq N$. Choose A, B, C, D in $SL(R)$ such that $A \cong C_{p^\alpha}$, $B \cong C_{p^\beta}$, $C \cong C_{p^\gamma}$, $D \cong C_{p^\delta}$, $\alpha \geq \beta$, $\gamma \geq \delta$ and $M = A \times B$, $N = C \times D$. Then $M \leq N \Rightarrow A, B \leq C \times D$. So, by Proposition 6.3.6., we have $A^\varphi, B^\varphi \leq C^\varphi \times D^\varphi$. Hence we get

$$M^\phi = A^\varphi \times B^\varphi \leq C^\varphi \times D^\varphi = N^\phi,$$

and we are done. ∎

<u>Lemma 6.3.9.</u> Let X be a group. Suppose that for every n in $\mathbb{N}$ we have a subgroup X_n of X and an autoprojectivity φ_n of X_n such that

$X_n \leq X_{n+1}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$,

$\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} X_n = X$,

$Y^{\varphi_n} = Y^{\varphi_{n+1}}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$ and every subgroup Y of X_n.

Then there exists a unique autoprojectivity φ of X such that

$$Y^\varphi = Y^{\varphi_n}$$

for every n in $\mathbb{N}$ and every subgroup Y of X_n.

<u>Proof</u>: For uniqueness, suppose we have φ and ψ in $\operatorname{Aut} L(X)$ such that $Y^\varphi = Y^{\varphi_n} = Y^\psi$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$ and every subgroup Y of X_n. Now suppose Y is a subgroup of X. If we put $Y_n = Y \wedge X_n$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$, then we get

$$Y^\varphi = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n^\varphi = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n^{\varphi_n} = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n^\psi = Y^\psi .$$

Hence $\varphi = \psi$. For the existence of φ, let Y be any subgroup of X. Define

$Y_n = Y \wedge X_n$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$ and $Y^{\varphi} = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n^{\varphi_n}$. From the hypothesis we get

$$Y_n^{\varphi_n} \le Y_n^{\varphi_{n+1}} \le Y_{n+1}^{\varphi_{n+1}}$$

and so Y^{φ} is actually a subgroup of X. We have therefore defined a map $\varphi: L(X) \to L(X)$. This map is inclusion preserving : for suppose Y and Z are subgroups of X such that $Y \le Z$. Then we have

$$Y_n = Y \wedge X_n \le Z \wedge X_n = Z_n$$

for every n in $\mathbb{N}$, and so

$$Y^{\varphi} = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n^{\varphi_n} \le \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Z_n^{\varphi_n} = Z^{\varphi}.$$

Now if we consider the family $\{\psi_n \mid \psi_n = \varphi_n^{-1}, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$, we still have $Y^{\psi_n} = Y^{\psi_{n+1}}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$ and every subgroup Y of X_n. So we may define an inclusion preseving map $\psi : L(X) \to L(X)$, in the same way we defined φ. If now Y is any subgroup of X we have

$$Y^{\varphi\psi} = \left(\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n^{\varphi_n}\right)^{\psi_n} = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n^{\varphi_n\psi_n} = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Y_n = Y,$$

and similarly $Y^{\psi\varphi} = Y$. Hence we get $\varphi\psi = \psi\varphi = 1$ and φ is an autoprojectivity of X. #

We can now extend the definition of the map $\bar{\varphi}$, previously defined, to the whole of $L(R)$.

Consider the family $\{R_n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ of finite subgroups of R. Then we have

$R_n \le R_{n+1}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$ and

$\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} R_n = R$. Now we observe that with the same procedure we used to construct the inclusion preserving map $\bar{\varphi}$ on the set of all finite subgroups of R, we can construct an inclusion preserving map $\bar{\psi}$ starting from the bijection

φ^{-1} of $SL(R)$, and verify that $\phi\psi = \psi\phi = 1$. So , actually , ϕ is bijective and it induces an autoprojectivity of every finite subgroup of R which is fixed by ϕ . Therefore we can define autoprojectivities λ_n for every n in $\mathbb{N}$ by restricting ϕ to $L(R_n)$, as R_n is fixed by ϕ . At this point we can apply Lemma 6.3.9. to obtain an autoprojectivity ϕ of R . We can finally state

Lemma 6.3.10. If φ is an automorphism of the meet-semilattice $SL(R)$ of all cyclic subgroups of R , then there exists a unique autoprojectivity ϕ of R inducing φ on $SL(R)$.

Proof : We have already shown how to construct ϕ from φ . Uniqueness is then clear , because if M is any subgroup of R and θ is an autoprojectivity of R inducing φ on $SL(R)$, then we have

$$M^{\theta} = \bigvee_{x \in M} \langle x \rangle^{\theta} = \bigvee_{x \in M} \langle x \rangle^{\varphi} = M^{\phi} .$$

So $\theta = \phi$. ∎

We can now prove the following

Proposition 6.3.11. Let T be a 2-dimensional torus . If for every prime r , $r \neq p$, we have an automorphism φ_r of $SL(T_r)$, then there exists a unique autoprojectivity φ of T such that

$$X^{\varphi_r} = X^{\varphi}$$

for every prime r different from p and every subgroup X of T_r .

Proof : By Lemma 6.3.10. , we can extend every φ_r to an autoprojectivity ϕ_r of T_r . Then , if X is any subgroup of T , we define $X^{\varphi} = \bigvee X_r^{\phi_r}$ (r prime , $r \neq p$) . Then φ is an autoprojectivity of T and clearly we have $X^{\varphi_r} = X^{\varphi}$ for every prime r different from p and every subgroup X of T_r . Uniqueness follows from the fact that a projectivity is determined by its action on the meet- semilattice of cyclic subgroups . ∎

Remark : We actually have $\mathrm{Aut}\, L(T) \cong \mathrm{Cr}\, \mathrm{Aut}\, SL(T_r)$, as φ is index-preserving . (In general it is not true that

$$\mathcal{L}(G) \cong \mathrm{Cr}\, \mathcal{L}(G_\lambda) \Longrightarrow \mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G) \cong \mathrm{Cr}\, \mathrm{Aut}\, \mathcal{L}(G_\lambda) \, ,$$

as one can see by taking $G = K^{\times}$) .

We shall apply Proposition 6.3.11. to the case when T is the subgroup of diagonal matrices of $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$.

§ 6.4 The group $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$ has autoprojectivities which are not induced by any automorphism .

If G is a simple algebraic group of type A_2 , then G is isomorphic as an algebraic group either to $SL_3(K)$ or to $PGL_3(K)$. We shall show that for the groups $SL_3(K)$ the group Γ is not in general trivial , by showing that $\Gamma(SL_3(\bar{F}_{23}))$ contains a finite subgroup isomorphic to S_3 . To do this we shall first define a family of autoprojectivities of the group T of diagonal matrices of $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$.

From now on we shall denote by p the prime 23 , by K the field $\bar{F}_{23}$ and by G the group $SL_3(K)$ and by T the subgroup of diagonal matrices of G (so that T is a maximal torus of G) . We shall also denote by r the prime 11 .

We fix our attention on the r-component R of T . Then we have $R \cong C_{r^\infty} \times C_{r^\infty}$. The Weyl group $W = \mathcal{N}(T)/T$ acts on T and on $\mathcal{L}(T)$ in the usual way . We have

$R^w = R$ and $R_\alpha{}^w = R_\alpha$ for every w in W and every α in $\mathbb{N}$.

R_1 has 12 subgroups of order r , which are subdivided in three classes under the action of W on $\mathcal{L}(T)$. To give a description of these three classes , we fix an element ξ in $F_p^{\times}$ of order r and we let

$$a = \mathrm{diag}(\xi\, , \xi^{-1}, 1) \quad , \quad b = \mathrm{diag}(\xi\, , \xi\, , \xi^{-2}) \quad , \quad c = \mathrm{diag}(\xi\, , \xi^{2}, \xi^{-3}) \ .$$

Then , if we put $\mathcal{A} = \langle a \rangle^W$, $\mathcal{B} = \langle b \rangle^W$, $\mathcal{C} = \langle c \rangle^W$, where

$X^W = \{X^w \mid w \in W\}$ for every subgroup X of T,

we get that $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{B}$ have three elements, while $\mathcal{E}$ has six elements, i.e. W acts faithfully on $\mathcal{E}$ (this is because $\mathcal{N}(\langle e\rangle) = T$). Let $E = \langle e\rangle$.

We start now by constructing a family $(\varphi_w)_{w\in W}$ of autoprojectivities of R. Fix w in W. We define

$\{1\}^{\varphi_w} = \{1\}$ and E^{φ_w} by $E^{\varphi_w} = E^w$.

Also, if X is any cyclic subgroup of R containing E, we put $X^{\varphi_w} = X^w$.

Let then Y be any cyclic non-trivial subgroup of R. We define

$Y^{\varphi_w} = Y$ if $\Omega(Y)$ lies in $\mathcal{A}$ or $\mathcal{B}$.

Otherwise $\Omega(Y)$ must lie in $\mathcal{E}$, and so there exists a unique ρ in W such that $\Omega(Y) = E^{\rho}$. We then put

$Y^{\varphi_w} = Y^{\rho^{-1}w\rho}$.

So far, we have defined φ_w on all cyclic subgroups of R, i.e. on $\mathcal{SL}(R)$.

Proposition 6.4.1. Let w be in W. Then φ_w is inclusion preserving.

Proof: Let X, Y be cyclic subgroups of R such that $X \leq Y$. If $X = \{1\}$, there is nothing to prove. So let $X \neq \{1\}$. Then we must have $\Omega(X) = \Omega(Y)$. Hence, if $\Omega(X)$ lies in $\mathcal{A}$ or $\mathcal{B}$, we have $X^{\varphi_w} = X \leq Y = Y^{\varphi_w}$. Otherwise let ρ be the unique element of W for which $\Omega(X) = E^{\rho}$. Then we have

$X^{\varphi_w} = X^{\rho^{-1}w\rho} \leq Y^{\rho^{-1}w\rho} = Y^{\varphi_w}$,

and we are done. ∎

Proposition 6.4.2. Let w, w' be elements of W. Then we have

$\varphi_w \varphi_{w'} = \varphi_{w'w}$.

In particular φ_w is bijective for every w in W, with inverse $\varphi_{w^{-1}}$.

Proof: Let Y be a cyclic subgroup of R. We want to show that $Y^{\varphi_w\varphi_{w'}} = Y^{\varphi_{w'w}}$. If $Y = \{1\}$, the there is nothing to prove. So assume $Y \neq \{1\}$. If $\Omega(Y)$ lies in $\mathcal{A}$ or $\mathcal{B}$, we have

$Y^{\varphi_w} = Y^{\varphi_{w'}} = Y^{\varphi_{w'w}} = Y$, and so we are done . Otherwise let ρ be the unique element of W for which $\Omega(Y) = E^{\rho}$. Then we have $Y^{\varphi_w} = Y^{\rho^{-1}w\rho}$ and $Y^{\varphi_{w'w}} = Y^{\rho^{-1}w'w\rho}$. Also , $\Omega(Y^{\rho^{-1}w\rho}) = (\Omega(Y))^{\rho^{-1}w\rho} = E^{w\rho}$. Hence

$$Y^{\varphi_w\varphi_{w'}} = (Y^{\rho^{-1}w\rho})^{\varphi_{w'}} = Y^{\rho^{-1}w\rho(w\rho)^{-1}w'(w\rho)} = Y^{\rho^{-1}w'w\rho} = Y^{\varphi_{w'w}}$$

and we get the result . In particular , as from the definition it is clear that φ_1 is the identity , we have $\varphi_w \varphi_{w^{-1}} = \varphi_{w^{-1}} \varphi_w = \varphi_1 = 1$, and so φ_w is bijective with inverse $\varphi_{w^{-1}}$. ∎

Proposition 6.4.3. Let w be in W . Then φ_w commutes with the action of W on the cyclic subgroups of R .

Proof : Let Y be a cyclic subgroup of R , and σ be in W . We need to show that $(Y^{\sigma})^{\varphi_w} = (Y^{\varphi_w})^{\sigma}$. If $Y = \{1\}$, the there is nothing to prove . So assume $Y \neq \{1\}$. If $\Omega(Y)$ lies in $\mathcal{A}$ or $\mathcal{B}$, then the same is true for $\Omega(Y^{\sigma})$. Hence we have $(Y^{\sigma})^{\varphi_w} = Y^{\sigma}$ and $Y^{\varphi_w} = Y$, which leaves us with $(Y^{\sigma})^{\varphi_w} = Y^{\sigma} = (Y^{\varphi_w})^{\sigma}$, and so we are done . Otherwise let ρ be the unique element of W for which $\Omega(Y) = E^{\rho}$. Then we also have $\Omega(Y^{\sigma}) = E^{\rho\sigma}$. Thus , by definition, we get $Y^{\varphi_w} = Y^{\rho^{-1}w\rho}$ and $(Y^{\sigma})^{\varphi_w} = Y^{\sigma(\rho\sigma)^{-1}w\rho\sigma} = Y^{\rho^{-1}w\rho\sigma} = (Y^{\varphi_w})^{\sigma}$, and the result is proved . ∎

At this point , in view of Proposition 6.3.11. , we can extend the definition of φ_w to the whole of $L(T)$. As usual , if s is a prime , we denote by T_s the s-component of T . Then , for every prime s and for every w in W , we define the element $\psi_{s,w}$ of Aut $SL(T_s)$ as follows :

$\psi_{r,w} = \varphi_w$,

$\psi_{s,w} = 1$ if $s \neq r$.

Then , by Proposition 6.3.11. , we obtain a family $(\psi_w)_{w \in W}$ of autoprojectivities of T .

Proposition 6.4.4. Let w, w' be elements of W and let X be a subgroup of

T such that $X_T = \{1\}$. Then we have

$\psi_w \psi_{w'} = \psi_{w'w}$.

ψ_w commutes with the action of W on $L(T)$, and

ψ_w fixes X.

Proof : This comes from the way we constructed ψ_w and Proposition 6.4.2., 6.4.3.. #

Proposition 6.4.5. The map given by

$w \mapsto \psi_w$ for every w in W,

defines an antimonomorphism of W into $\mathrm{Aut}\, L(T)$.

Proof : From Proposition 6.4.4., we have that this map is an antihomomorphism, and it is clearly injective as

$w \neq 1$ implies $E^{\psi_w} = E^w \neq E$. #

Our aim is to show that it is possible to extend the definition of ψ_w to the whole of $L(G)$, for every w in W. For this purpose we introduce the groups $G_n = SL_3(p^{n!})$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$, and the groups H_n of diagonal matrices of G. Then we shall have $G_n \leq G_{n+1}$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$, and $\bigcup_{j \in \mathbb{N}} G_j = G$. We recall the notation we introduced in § 6.2. There we considered the finite field $\mathbb{F}_q$ and for every subfield F of $\mathbb{F}_q$, we defined $T(F)$ to be the group of diagonal matrices with entries in F. Here we just extend this definition by saying that for every subfield F of K, we defined $T(F)$ to be the subgroup of T whose entries are in F. Therefore we shall have $H_n = T(\mathbb{F}_{p^{n!}})$ for every n in $\mathbb{N}$. Furthermore, for every element $s = \mathrm{diag}(\lambda, \mu, \nu)$ of T, we define $\alpha_i(s)$ and $\mu_i(s)$, for $i = 1, 2, 3$, as we did in § 6.2. Also we recall Definition 6.2.1. for the definition of s to satisfy condition $(*)$ or $(**)$. If s satisfies $(*)$, then we still define $F(s)$ to be the subfield $\mathbb{F}_p(\alpha_1(s))$ $(= \mathbb{F}_p(\alpha_2(s)) = \mathbb{F}_p(\alpha_3(s)))$ of K. As we did in § 6.2, we shall write α_i, μ_i, and F instead of $\alpha_i(s)$, $\mu_i(s)$ and $F(s)$ if there is no ambiguity.

Observation 6.4.6. We observe that if X is a cyclic subgroup of T, and there exists a generator s of X satisfying $(*)$, then every generator of X satisfies $(*)$. Also, if there exists a generator s of X satisfying $(**)$, then every generator of X satisfies $(**)$. ∎

We shall use the properties of the autoprojectivities ψ_w to define certain autoprojectivities of the groups G_n, by using Proposition 6.2.9..

Proposition 6.4.7. Let ψ be an autoprojectivity of T. Then for every α in $\mathbb{N}$, and every subfield F of K, we have

$R_\alpha^\psi = R_\alpha$ and $T(F)^\psi = T(F)$.

Proof : Let α be in $\mathbb{N}$. We have $R^\psi = R$, because ψ is index-preserving. Hence we have $R_\alpha^\psi = R_\alpha$ as every autoprojectivity of R fixes R_α (being generated by all the cyclic subgroups of R of order p^α). Let now F be a subfield of K. Assume first that F is finite. Then $T(F)$ is the subgroup of T generated by all cyclic subgroups of T of order p^n-1, and therefore it is fixed by ψ. In general, F will be the union of the family $(F_a)_{a\in A}$ of its finite subfields F_a's. Hence we get $T(F) = \bigvee T(F_a)$ (for all $a \in A$), and so $T(F)^\psi = \bigvee T(F_a)^\psi = \bigvee T(F_a) = T(F)$. ∎

We need an explicit description of certain elements of R.
For every i in $\{0, 1, ..., r-1\}$, we define

$e_i = \mathrm{diag}(\xi, \xi^i, \xi^{-1-i})$ (so that $e = e_2$)

(recall that ξ is a fixed element of $F_p^{\times}$ of order r).

From a direct calculation it is possible to see that $\langle e_i \rangle$ lies in $\mathcal{E}$ if and only if i lies in the set $\{2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8\}$.

Proposition 6.4.8. Suppose i lies in $\{0, 1, ..., r-1\}$ and $i \neq 0, 1, (r-1)/2$. Then we have

$\alpha_m(e_i) \neq \alpha_n(e_i)$ for every $m, n = 1, 2, 3$, $m \neq n$.

If also $i \neq r-2$, then we have

$|\alpha_m(e_i)| = r$ for every $m = 1, 2, 3$.

Proof : We have $\alpha_1(e_i) = \xi^{1-i}$, $\alpha_2(e_i) = \xi^{2i+1}$, $\alpha_3(e_i) = \xi^{2+i}$.

Then we get the result observing that the solutions in $\{0, 1, \ldots, r-1\}$ of the equations : $1-i \equiv 2i+1 \mod r$; $1-i \equiv 2+i \mod r$; $2i+1 \equiv 2+i \mod r$; $1-i \equiv 0 \mod r$; $2i+1 \equiv 0 \mod r$; $2+i \equiv 0 \mod r$ are respectively $i = 0$, $(r-1)/2$, 1, 1, $(r-1)/2$ and $r-2$. ∎

The next proposition is the crucial step in our construction.

Proposition 6.4.9. Let X be a cyclic r-subgroup of T such that $\Omega(X)$ is in $\mathcal{E}$. Then every generator of X satisfies (**).

Proof : There exists a unique i in $\{2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8\}$ such that $\Omega(X) = \langle e_i \rangle$. Let r^a be the order of X, and choose η in K^* such that $\eta^{r^{a-1}} = \xi$. Then there exists a in $\mathbb{Z}$ such that $X = \langle \mathrm{diag}(\eta, \eta^a, \eta^{-1-a}) \rangle$. Call s this element $\mathrm{diag}(\eta, \eta^a, \eta^{-1-a})$. We must have $a \equiv i \mod r$, as $s^{r^{a-1}} = e_i$.

Now $\alpha_j(s)^{r^{a-1}} = \alpha_j(s^{r^{a-1}}) = \alpha_j(e_i)$, and so $\alpha_j(s)$ is a root of the polynomial $X^{r^{a-1}} - \alpha_j(e_i)$, which is in $\mathbb{F}_p[X]$. Hence

$\mu_j(s) \mid X^{r^{a-1}} - \alpha_j(e_i)$ for every $j = 1, 2, 3$.

But, from Proposition 6.4.8. we have $\alpha_j(e_i) \neq \alpha_k(e_i)$ for every $j, k = 1, 2, 3$, $j \neq k$, and so we get $\mu_j(s) \neq \mu_k(s)$ for every $j, k = 1, 2, 3$, $j \neq k$.

We now prove that $|\alpha_j(s)| = |s|$ for every $j = 1, 2, 3$, and $\deg \mu_j(s) = \deg \mu_k(s)$ for every $j, k = 1, 2, 3$. From Proposition 6.4.8., we have

$|\alpha_j(e_i)| = r$ for every $j = 1, 2, 3$,

and so we get

$|\alpha_j(s)| = r^a$ for every $j = 1, 2, 3$,

as $\alpha_j(s)^{r^{a-1}} = \alpha_j(e_i)$. Hence we get $|\alpha_j(s)| = |s|$ for every $j = 1, 2, 3$. But $|\alpha_j(s)| = r^a$ for every $j = 1, 2, 3$, also implies that $\mathbb{F}_p(\alpha_j(s)) = \mathbb{F}_p(\eta)$ for every $j = 1, 2, 3$, which means that $\deg \mu_j(s) = \deg \mu_k(s)$ for every $j, k = 1, 2, 3$. Therefore s satisfies (*). Now let n be any element of $\mathcal{N}(T)$. Then the element nsn^{-1} is a generator of the subgroup nXn^{-1} of T. Let us denote by X' this subgroup of T. But then $\Omega(X')$ lies in $\mathcal{E}$, and so, by the previous discussion, there exists a generator s' of X' satisfying $(*)$. But then, by Observation 6.4.6., every generator of X' satisfies $(*)$. Therefore nsn^{-1} satisfies $(*)$ and s satisfies $(**)$. But then every generator of X satisfies $(**)$ by Observation 6.4.6.. #

We need now to know the behaviour of finite subgroups of T not fixed by any autoprojectivity ψ_w, under the action of W.

Proposition 6.4.10. Let X be a finite subgroup of T. Suppose there exists w in W such that $X^{\psi_w} \neq X$. Then we have

$$X^{\sigma} \neq X$$

for every non-trivial element σ of W.

Proof: We can write $X = X_1 \times X_2$, where X_1 is contained in T_r and $(X_2)_r = \{1\}$. Then we have $X_2^{\psi_w} = X_2$, and so we must have $X_1^{\psi_w} \neq X_1$. Now $X_1 \leq T_r \Rightarrow X_1 = A \times B$, where A, B are cyclic subgroups of T_r such that $A \cong C_{\alpha}$, $B \cong C_{\beta}$ and $\alpha \geq \beta$. We must have $\alpha > \beta$, otherwise we get $X_1 = R_{\alpha}$ and so $X_1^{\psi_w} = X_1$, by Proposition 6.4.7.. Also we have $A^{\psi_w} \neq A$; suppose on the contrary that $A^{\psi_w} = A$. Then $X_1 = A \times B \geq R_{\beta} \geq B \Rightarrow X_1 = <A, R_{\beta}>$. But then $X_1^{\psi_w} = <A^{\psi_w}, R_{\beta}^{\psi_w}> = <A, R_{\beta}> = X_1$, which is a contradiction. So we have $A^{\psi_w} \neq A$, and this implies that $\Omega(A) \in \mathcal{E}$. Now let σ be in W, $\sigma \neq 1$. Then we have $A^{\sigma} \wedge A = \{1\}$, as $\Omega(A)^{\sigma} \neq \Omega(A)$. Hence we have $A^{\sigma} \nleq A \times B$, as $\beta < \alpha$, and so $X_1^{\sigma} \neq X_1$. But then $X^{\sigma} = X_1^{\sigma} \times X_2^{\sigma} \neq X_1 \times X_2 = X$, as we wanted. #

We can now start the last part of our construction. At the moment, we have a family $(\psi_w)_{w \in W}$ of autoprojectivities of T such that:

ψ_w commutes with the action of W on $L(T)$, for every w in W (Proposition 6.4.4.);

if X is a subgroup of T whose r-component is the identity, then $X^{\psi_w} = X$ for every w in W. In particular ψ_w fixes all the 2-subgroups and all the 3-subgroups of T (Proposition 6.4.4.);

the map given by $w \to \psi_w$ is an antimonomorphism of W into Aut $L(T)$ (Proposition 6.4.5.);

$R_\alpha{}^{\psi_w} = R_\alpha$ for every α in $\mathbb{N}$ and every w in W (Proposition 6.4.7.);

$T(F)^{\psi_w} = T(F)$ for every subfield F of K and every w in W (Proposition 6.4.7.);

ψ_w fixes every finite subgroup of T which is fixed by a non-trivial element of W, for every w in W (Proposition 6.4.10.).

We recall that for every n in $\mathbb{N}$ we have $H_n = T(F_{p^{n!}})$. Hence we have $H_n{}^{\psi_w} = H_n$ for every w in W and every n in $\mathbb{N}$. So we can define $\lambda_{w,n}$ to be the autoprojectivity of H_n obtained by restricting ψ_w to $L(H_n)$. From the properties of ψ_w, it follows that $\lambda_{w,n}$ satisfies conditions (i).- (iii). of Proposition 6.2.9.. We shall show that $\lambda_{w,n}$ also satisfies condition (iv')..

<u>Proposition 6.4.11.</u> Let s be a prime power order element of T not satisfying (**). Then we have

$$< s >^{\psi_w} = < s >$$

for every w in W.

<u>Proof</u>: Suppose, for a contradiction, that we have $< s >^{\psi_w} \neq < s >$ for some w in W. Then we must have $|s| = r^n$ for some n in $\mathbb{N}$, as ψ_w fixes every subgroup of T generated by an r'-element. Furthermore, $\Omega(< s >)$ must lie in $\mathcal{E}$, otherwise we would have $< s >^{\psi_w} = < s >$ by construction of ψ_w. But then $< s >$ is a cyclic r-subgroup of T such that $\Omega(< s >)$ lies in $\mathcal{E}$, and so, by Proposition 6.4.9., s satisfies (**), which contradicts the hypothesis that s does not satisfy (**). ∎

We can then summarize that for every w in W, for every n in $\mathbb{N}$, we have

(i). $\lambda_{w,n}$ commutes with the action of $\mathcal{N}_{G_n}(H_n)/H_n$ (Proposition 6.4.4. as this group acts on $L(H_n)$ in the same way as W does) ;

(ii). $\lambda_{w,n}$ fixes every subgroup of H_n which is fixed by a non-trivial element of $\mathcal{N}_{G_n}(H_n)/H_n$ (Proposition 6.4.10.);

(iii). $\lambda_{w,n}$ fixes every 2-subgroup and every 3-subgroup of H_n (by construction of $\lambda_{w,n}$) ;

(iv'). if s is a prime power order element of T not satisfying (**), then $\lambda_{w,n}$ fixes the subgroup generated by s (Proposition 6.4.11.).

We can therefore apply Proposition 6.2.9. to get the following

Proposition 6.4.12. For every w in W and for every n in $\mathbb{N}$, there exists a unique autoprojectivity $\theta_{w,n}$ of G_n fixing every p-subgroup of G_n and commuting with the inner automorphisms of G_n, such that

$$X^{\theta_{w,n}} = X^{\lambda_{w,n}}$$

for every subgroup X of H_n.

Proof : Existence follows from Proposition 6.2.9. , and uniqueness from the corollary on page 216 in [V_2]. #

We finally have

Proposition 6.4.13. For every w in W there exists a unique autoprojectivity δ_w of G, such that δ_w restricted to $L(G_n)$ is $\theta_{w,n}$, for every n in $\mathbb{N}$.

Proof : Let w be in W. Let n be in $\mathbb{N}$ and let X be a subgroup of G_n. Then we have $X^{\theta_{w,n}} = X^{\theta_{w,n+1}}$ because of uniqueness of $\theta_{w,n}$ (Proposition 6.4.12.). Then the result follows from Lemma 6.3.9. . #

From the construction it follows that δ_w fixes all unipotent subgroups of G and commutes with the inner automorphisms of G. We can therefore prove

Proposition 6.4.14. For every w in W, δ_w fixes all maximal tori and all

Borel subgroups of G. Hence δ_w lies in Γ.

Proof : Let T' be a maximal torus of G. Then there exists g in G such that $T' = T^g$. Hence we have

$$T'^{\delta_w} = (T^g)^{\delta_w} = (T^{\delta_w})^g = T^g = T'.$$

Now let B be a Borel subgroup of G and let T' be a maximal torus of B. Then we have

$$B^{\delta_w} = \langle T', R_u(B) \rangle^{\delta_w} = \langle T'^{\delta_w}, R_u(B)^{\delta_w} \rangle = \langle T', R_u(B) \rangle = B,$$

and we are done . ∎

Finally we can say we constructed an injective antihomomorphism of W into Γ, given by $w \to \delta_w$. In particular we have

Corollary 6.4.15. The group $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$ has autoprojectivites which are not induced by automorphisms .

Proof : We know that this is equivalent to the fact that Γ is not trivial . We showed that in our case Γ contains a subgroup which is isomorphic to S_3 (Proposition 6.4.5.). In particular it is not trivial . ∎

From the construction (but it had to be so) , we have $Z^{\delta_w} = Z$ for every w in W, where Z is the center of $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$. Hence also the group

$$PSL_3(\bar{F}_{23}) = SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})/Z$$

has autoprojectivities which are not induced by any automorphism . Therefore the same will be true for the group $PGL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$, which is isomorphic as an abstract group to $PSL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$.

Remark . In fact it is possible to show that $\Gamma(SL_3(\bar{F}_{23}))$ is infinite and even non-solvable .

Let us take a closer look at the group R (we recall that $R = T_{11} \cong C_{11^\infty} \times C_{11^\infty}$). We denote by E_1 (= E),..., E_6 the elements of $\mathcal{E}$. Then each is contained in exactly 11 cyclic subgroups of R of order 11^2. Let us denote these by

$E_{1,1}, \dots, E_{1,11}, E_{2,1}, \dots E_{2,11}, \dots, E_{6,1}, \dots, E_{6,11}$,

choosing the notation such that

$\Omega(E_{i,j}) = E_i$ for every $i = 1,\dots,6$, $j = 1,\dots,11$.

Each $E_{i,j}$, will be contained in 11 cyclic subgroups of R as well. We shall denote these by $E_{i,j,k}$, where $i \in \{1,\dots,6\}$ and $j, k \in \{1,\dots,11\}$, such that

$\Omega_2(E_{i,j,k}) = E_{i,j}$ for every $i = 1,\dots,6$, $j, k = 1,\dots,11$.

We can keep on with this procedure to obtain that every subgroup X of R such that $\Omega(X)$ lies in $\mathcal{E}$, has uniquely the form

$X = E_{i_1,i_2,\dots,i_n}$, where X has order p^n, $i_1 \in \{1,\dots,6\}$, $i_2,\dots,i_n \in \{1,\dots,11\}$, and

$\Omega_{n-1}(X) = E_{i_1,i_2,\dots,i_{n-1}}$ if $n > 1$.

Let Θ be the group $\{ (\sigma_i)_{i=2,\dots} \mid \sigma_i \in S_{11}$ for every $i = 2, 3, \dots \}$. We make Θ act on the set of all cyclic subgroups X of R such that $\Omega(X) = E_1$. Let X be a cyclic subgroup of R such that $\Omega(X) = E_1$. Then we have uniquely

$X = E_{1,i_2,\dots,i_n}$, where X has order p^n, and $i_2,\dots,i_n \in \{1,\dots,11\}$.

Let $\sigma = (\sigma_i)$ be in Θ. Then we define

$X^\sigma = E_{1,\sigma_2(i_2),\dots,\sigma_n(i_n)}$.

Suppose X, Y are subgroups of R such that $\Omega(X) = E_1$ and $X \le Y$. Then also $\Omega(Y) = E_1$, and we have uniquely

$X = E_{1,i_2,\dots,i_n}$, $Y = E_{1,j_2,\dots,j_m}$,

where X has order p^n, Y has order p^m, $i_2,\dots,i_n, j_2,\dots,j_m \in \{1,\dots,11\}$, and also $m \ge n$, $i_k = j_k$ for every $k = 2,\dots,n$, as $X \le Y$.

If now $\sigma = (\sigma_i)$ lies in Θ, we have

$X^\sigma = E_{1,\sigma_2(i_2),\dots,\sigma_n(i_n)}$, $Y^\sigma = E_{1,\sigma_2(j_2),\dots,\sigma_m(j_m)}$,

and so we get

$X^\sigma \le Y^\sigma$,

as $\sigma_k(i_k) = \sigma_k(j_k)$ for every $k = 2,\dots,n$.

It is possible , with the same argument we used in § 6.4 , to define an autoprojectivity φ_σ of T , for every σ in Θ . It will then turn out that $\Gamma(SL_3(\bar{F}_{23}))$ contains a subgroup isomorphic to Θ . In particular $\Gamma(SL_3(\bar{F}_{23}))$ is infinite and non-solvable .

We also add that it seems to be reasonable that we can extend to autoprojectivities of $SL_3(\bar{F}_{23})$ also automorphisms of $SL(T_s)$ for other primes s , and even that in general a similar procedure can be applied to the groups $SL_3(\bar{F}_p)$ for every prime p .

§ 6.5 Final remark .

In the previous chapter we proved that for simple algebraic groups of type A_2 , Theorem 3.4.9. does not hold . To prove this we showed that the group $\Gamma(SL_3(\bar{F}_{23}))$ contains a subgroup isomorphic to S_3 .

With the example we gave in the last paragraph , we actually proved that the case A_2 left out in the previous dicussion , represents indeed an exceptional case among the simple algebraic groups G over $\bar{F}_p$, from the subgroup lattice point of view .

Nevertheless we underline that we did not consider the case when p = 2 , with the exception of groups of rank 1 . We have some results also in this direction , even if we are still far from a complete understanding of the situation.

For instance , it is possible to extend the results obtained by Völklein ([V2]) for the groups $SL_n(2^a)/D$ (where D is any central subgroup of $SL_n(2^a)$) . Also, from the results we got in Chapter 4 , if the rank of G is at least 3 , then every exceptional autoprojectivity of G fixes every subgroup generated by semisimple elements of G .

The difficulties arise from the classification of unipotent conjugacy classes in characteristic 2 , which is usually much more complicated than the case of odd characteristic. We were able to prove that if φ lies in $\Gamma(G)$, where G is a simple algebraic group over $\overline{\mathbb{F}}_2$, then φ fixes all the subgroups of order 2 of G, using the classification of involutions ([Se]).

Finally I would like to mention the problem whether the projective image of a simple algebraic group G over $\overline{\mathbb{F}}_p$ is isomorphic (as an abstract group) to G. This is very likely to be true. It has been possible to prove this in the case when G is of adjoint type.

References

[Bi] Birkhoff G. : "Lattice theory", Amer. Math. Soc. Colloquium Publications 25 , New York (1949) .

[B] Borel A. : "Linear algebraic groups", Benjamin, New York (1969) .

[B,T] Borel A. , Tits J. : "Groupes réductifs" , Publ. Math. IHES, 27 (1965) , 55-151 .

[Bo] Bourbaki , N. : "Groupes et algèbres de Lie ", IV, V, VI , Hermann , Paris (1972) .

[B,N] Busetto G. , Napolitani F . : "On the behaviour of normal subgroups under projectivities" , to appear .

[C_1] Carter R.W. : "Simple groups of Lie type " , John Wiley , London (1972).

[C_2] Carter R.W. : "Finite groups of Lie type " , John Wiley , London (1985) .

[Ch] Chevalley C. : "Séminaire sur la classification des groupes de Lie algébriques", Notes polycopiees , Paris (1956-58) .

[Co] Cooper C. : "Power automorphisms of a group" , Math. Zeit. 107 , (1968) 335-356 .

[Cs_1] Costantini M. : "Sul gruppo delle autoproiettività dei gruppi lineari generale e speciale su un corpo finito" , Tesi di laurea , Padova 1985 .

[Cs_2] Costantini M. : "Sul gruppo delle autoproiettività di PSL(3,q)", Rivista di Matematica Pura ed Applicata dell' Università di Udine, to appear.

[Cs_3] Costantini M. : "On lattice automorphisms of the special linear group" Rend. Acc. Naz. Lincei Cl. Scienze, to appear.

[D] Dieudonné J. : "Le géométrie des groupes classiques", Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete, 5 (1955), Springer.

[Hu] Humphreys J.E. : "Linear algebraic groups", Graduate texts in Mathematics, 21 (1987) Springer.

[M_1] Metelli C. : "Sugli isomorfismi reticolari di $PSL_2(p^f)$", Rend. Acc. Naz. Lincei Cl. Scienze, s. VIII, vol. XLVII, fasc. 6 (1969).

[M_2] Metelli C. : "I gruppi semplici minimali sono individuati reticolarmente in senso stretto", Rend. Sem. Mat. Univ. Padova 45, (1971) 367-378.

[O] Ore O. : "Structures and group theory II" Duke Math. J. 4 (1938) 247-269.

[P_1] Pommerening K. : "Über die unipotenten Klassen reduktiver Gruppen", J. Algebra, 49 (1977), 525-536.

[P_2] Pommerening K. : "Über die unipotenten Klassen reduktiver Gruppen II", J. Algebra, 65 (1980), 373-398.

[R] Rips E. : "Lattice isomorphisms of groups, subgroups of finite index and normality", Manuscript.

[Sch] Schmidt R. : "Verbandsautomorphismen der alternierenden Gruppen", Math. Zeit. 154 (1977) 71-78.

[Se] Seitz G.M. : "Involutions in Chevalley groups over fields of even order", Nagoya Math. J. 63 (1976) 1-91.

[Sp] Springer T.A. : "Linear algebraic groups" , Birkhäuser , Boston (1981) .

[St] Steinberg R. : "Lectures on Chevalley groups" , Yale University (1967) .

[S] Suzuki M. : "Structure of a group and the structure of its lattice of subgroups" , Springer , Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg (1956).

[T_1] Tits J. : "Algebraic and abstract simple groups" , Ann. of Math. , 80 (1964), 313-329 .

[T_2] Tits J. : "Building of spherical type and finite BN-pairs" , LNM 386 (1974) , Springer .

[V_1] Völklein H. : "On the lattice automorphisms of the finite Chevalley groups" , Indag. Math. 89 (1986) , 213-228 .

[V_2] Völklein H. : "On the lattice automorphisms of $SL_n(q)$ and $PSL_n(q)$" , Rend. Sem. Mat. Univ. Padova 76 (1986) 207-217 .

[Y] Yacovlev B.V. : "Lattice isomorphisms of solvable groups", Alg. i Log. 9 (1970) , 349-369 .

[Z_1] Zacher G. : "Sul reticolo dei sottogruppi di un gruppo di permutazioni", Padova , Cedam (1965) .

[Z_2] Zacher G. : "Una caratterizzazione reticolare della finitezza dell' indice di un sottogruppo di un gruppo" , Rend. Acc. Naz. Lincei Cl. Scienze, s.VIII , vol. LXIX , fasc. 6 (1980) .

[Za] Zappa G. : "Sulla risolubilità dei gruppi finiti in isomorfismo reticolare con un gruppo risolubile", Giornale di Mat. Battaglini 80 (1951) , 213-255 .

TITLE ON THE LATTICE AUTOMORPHISMS OF CERTAIN ALGEBRAIC GROUPS

AUTHOR Mauro Costantini

INSTITUTION and DATE University of Warwick 1989

D90923